



Version 4.1

***C Cross Compiler User's Guide
for Motorola MC68HC11***

Copyright © COSMIC Software 1995, 2002
All Trademarks are the property of their respective owners

Table of Contents

Preface

Organization of this Manual	1
-----------------------------------	---

Chapter 1

Introduction

Introduction.....	4
Document Conventions.....	4
Typewriter font.....	4
Italics	5
[Brackets]	5
Conventions.....	6
Command Line	6
Flags	6
Compiler Architecture	8
Predefined Symbol.....	9
Linking.....	9
Programming Support Utilities.....	9
Listings.....	10
Optimizations.....	10
Support for Bank Switching	12
Support for ROMable Code.....	12
Support for eeprom.....	13

Chapter 2

Tutorial Introduction

Acia.c, Example file.....	16
Default Compiler Operation.....	17
Compiling and Linking.....	18
Step 1: Compiling.....	18
Step 2: Assembling.....	19
Step 3: Linking	20
Step 4: Generating S-Records file.....	22
Linking Your Application.....	23
Generating Automatic Data Initialization.....	24
Specifying Command Line Options	26

Chapter 3

Programming Environments

Introduction.....	30
Modifying the Runtime Startup.....	31

Description of Runtime Startup Code	31
Initializing data in RAM.....	33
The const and volatile Type Qualifiers.....	35
Performing Input/Output in C.....	36
Placing Data Objects in The Bss Section	37
Placing Data Objects in The Zero Page Section.....	37
Setting Zero Page Size	38
Redefining Sections.....	38
Fast Function Calls	40
Placing Data Objects in the EEPROM Space.....	41
Stack Usage	42
Static Model 0	42
Static Model 1	42
Static Model 2	42
Static Model 3	43
Referencing Absolute Addresses.....	43
Accessing Internal Registers	45
Inserting Inline Assembly Instructions.....	46
Inlining with pragmas.....	46
Inlining with _asm.....	47
Writing Interrupt Handlers	49
Placing Addresses in Interrupt Vectors	50
Calling a Bank Switched Function.....	51
Interfacing C to Assembly Language	53
Register Usage.....	55
Stack Model.....	55
Stack Representation.....	56
Static Models.....	57
Heap Management Control with the C Compiler.....	58
Modifying The Heap Location.....	60
Data Representation.....	63

Chapter 4

Using The Compiler

Invoking the Compiler.....	66
Compiler Command Line Options	67
File Naming Conventions	72
Generating Listings.....	73
Generating an Error File	73
Return Status.....	73
Examples	73
C Library Support.....	74

How C Library Functions are Packaged.....	74
Inserting Assembler Code Directly	74
Linking Libraries with Your Program.....	74
Integer Library Functions.....	74
Common Input/Output Functions.....	75
Functions Implemented as Macros.....	75
Including Header Files	75
Descriptions of C Library Functions	77
Generate inline assembly code.....	78
Initialize K4 window registers.....	79
Abort program execution.....	80
Find absolute value.....	81
Arccosine.....	82
Arcsine.....	83
Arctangent	84
Arctangent of y/x.....	85
Convert buffer to double	86
Convert buffer to integer	87
Convert buffer to long	88
Verify the recorded checksum.....	89
Allocate and clear space on the heap.....	90
Round to next higher integer.....	91
Cosine	92
Hyperbolic cosine.....	93
Divide with quotient and remainder.....	94
Copy a buffer to an eeprom buffer	95
Erase the full eeprom space	96
Propagate fill character throughout eeprom buffer	97
Exit program execution	98
Exponential.....	99
Find double absolute value.....	100
Round to next lower integer	101
Find double modulus	102
Free space on the heap.....	103
Extract fraction from exponent part	104
Get character from input stream	105
Get a text line from input stream.....	106
Test for alphabetic or numeric character.....	107
Test for alphabetic character	108
Test for control character.....	109
Test for digit.....	110
Test for graphic character.....	111

Test for lower-case character	112
Test for printing character	113
Test for punctuation character	114
Test for whitespace character	115
Test for upper-case character	116
Test for hexadecimal digit.....	117
Find long absolute value	118
Scale double exponent.....	119
Long divide with quotient and remainder	120
Natural logarithm	121
Common logarithm	122
Restore calling environment.....	123
Allocate space on the heap	124
Test for maximum	125
Scan buffer for character	126
Compare two buffers for lexical order	127
Copy one buffer to another.....	128
Copy one buffer to another.....	129
Propagate fill character throughout buffer	130
Test for minimum.....	131
Extract fraction and integer from double	132
Raise x to the y power.....	133
Output formatted arguments to stdout.....	134
Put a character to output stream.....	139
Put a text line to output stream.....	140
Generate pseudo-random number	141
Reallocate space on the heap.....	142
Allocate new memory	143
Read formatted input.....	144
Save calling environment.....	148
Sin.....	150
Hyperbolic sine.....	151
Output arguments formatted to buffer.....	152
Real square root.....	153
Seed pseudo-random number generator.....	154
Read formatted input from a string	155
Concatenate strings.....	156
Scan string for first occurrence of character	157
Compare two strings for lexical order.....	158
Copy one string to another	159
Find the end of a span of characters in a set.....	160
Find length of a string	161

Concatenate strings of length n	162
Compare two n length strings for lexical order.....	163
Copy n length string	164
Find occurrence in string of character in set	165
Scan string for last occurrence of character	166
Find the end of a span of characters not in set.....	167
Scan string for first occurrence of string	168
Convert buffer to double	169
Convert buffer to long	170
Convert buffer to unsigned long.....	171
Tangent	172
Hyperbolic tangent	173
Convert character to lower-case if necessary	174
Convert character to upper-case if necessary	175
Get pointer to next argument in list.....	176
Stop accessing values in an argument list	178
Start accessing values in an argument list	180
Output arguments formatted to stdout.....	182
Output arguments formatted to buffer.....	183

Chapter 5

Using The Assembler

Invoking ca6811	186
Object File.....	188
Listings.....	189
Assembly Language Syntax.....	190
Instructions	190
Labels	191
Temporary Labels.....	192
Constants	192
Expressions.....	194
Macro Instructions.....	195
Conditional Directives.....	198
Sections.....	199
Includes.....	200
Branch Optimization.....	201
Old Syntax	201
C Style Directives	202
Directives	202
Align the next instruction on a given boundary	203
Define the default base for numerical constants.....	204
Switch to the predefined .bsct section.	205

Turn listing of conditionally excluded code on or off.....	206
Allocate constant(s)	207
Allocate constant block	208
Turn listing of debug directives on or off.....	209
Allocate variable(s)	210
Conditional assembly	211
Conditional assembly	212
Stop the assembly	213
End conditional assembly.....	214
End conditional assembly.....	215
End macro definition.....	216
End repeat section	217
Give a permanent value to a symbol.....	218
Assemble next byte at the next even address relative to the start of a section.....	219
Generate error message	220
Conditional assembly	221
Conditional assembly	222
Conditional assembly	223
Conditional assembly	224
Conditional assembly	225
Conditional assembly	226
Conditional assembly	227
Conditional assembly	228
Conditional assembly	229
Conditional assembly	230
Conditional assembly	231
Include text from another text file.....	232
Turn on listing during assembly.....	233
Create a new local block	234
Define a macro	235
Send a message out to STDOUT.....	237
Terminate a macro definition	238
Turn on or off listing of macro expansion.....	239
Turn off listing.	240
Disable pagination in the listing file	241
Creates absolute symbols	242
Sets the location counter to an offset from the beginning of a section.....	243
Start a new page in the listing file	244
Specify the number of lines per pages in the listing file..	245
Repeat a list of lines a number of times.....	246

Repeat a list of lines a number of times	247
Restore saved section	249
Terminate a repeat definition.....	250
Save section.....	251
Define a new section	252
Give a resetable value to a symbol.....	254
Insert a number of blank lines before the next statement in the listing file.....	255
Place code into a section.....	256
Specify the number of spaces for a tab character in the listing file.....	257
Define default header	258
Declare a variable to be visible	259
Declare symbol as being defined elsewhere.....	260

Chapter 6

Using The Linker

Introduction.....	263
Overview.....	264
Linker Command File Processing.....	266
Inserting comments in Linker commands	267
Linker Options	268
Global Command Line Options.....	269
Segment Control Options	270
Segment Grouping.....	273
Linking Files on the Command line.....	273
Example.....	274
Include Option	274
Example.....	274
Private Region Options.....	275
Symbol Definition Option	276
Reserve Space Option.....	277
Section Relocation	278
Address Arithmetic.....	278
Overlapping Control.....	279
Setting Bias and Offset	279
Setting the Bias.....	279
Setting the Offset.....	280
Using Default Placement.....	280
Linking Objects.....	280
Linking Library Objects.....	281
Library Order.....	282

Automatic Data Initialization	283
Descriptor Format.....	283
Checksum Computation	284
Shared Data Handling.....	286
DEFs and REFs	287
Special Topics.....	288
Private Name Regions	288
Renaming Symbols	288
Absolute Symbol Tables	292
Description of The Map File	292
Return Value.....	293
Linker Command Line Examples.....	294

Chapter 7

Debugging Support

Generating Debugging Information.....	298
Generating Line Number Information.....	298
Generating Data Object Information.....	298
The cprd Utility	300
Command Line Options	300
Examples	300
The clst utility	302
Command Line Options	302

Chapter 8

Programming Support

The cbank Utility	306
Command Line Options	306
Return Status	306
Examples	307
The chex Utility	308
Command Line Options	308
Return Status	310
Examples	310
The clabs Utility	311
Command Line Options	311
Return Status	312
Examples	312
The clib Utility.....	314
Command Line Options	314
Return Status	315
Examples	315

The cobj Utility	316
Command Line Options	316
Return Status	317
Examples	317
The cv695 Utility	318
Command Line Options	318
Return Status	320
Examples	320

Chapter A

Compiler Error Messages

Parser (cp6811) Error Messages	322
Code Generator (cg6811) Error Messages	336
Assembler (ca6811) Error Messages	337
Linker (clnk) Error Messages	340

Chapter B

Modifying Compiler Operation

The Configuration File	344
Changing the Default Options	345
Creating Your Own Options	345
Example	346

Chapter C

MC68HC11 Machine Library

Check stack growth	348
Add double to double	349
Compare double with double	350
Divide double by double	351
Multiply double by double	352
Negate a double	353
Subtract double from double	354
Copy a double into a double	355
Convert double to float	356
Convert double to integer	357
Convert double into long integer	358
Copy a double onto the stack	359
Eeprom char bit field update	360
Eeprom short bit field update	361
Write a char int in eeprom	362
Write a double in eeprom	363
Write a long int in eeprom	364

Write a short int in eeprom.....	365
Move a structure in eeprom.....	366
Function entry	367
Function entry	368
Add float to float	369
Compare floats	370
Divide float by float	371
Add float to float in memory.....	372
Divide float by float in memory.....	373
Multiply float by float in memory.....	374
Subtract float from float in memory.....	375
Multiply float by float	376
Negate a float.....	377
Subtract float from float.....	378
Convert float into double	379
Convert float to integer.....	380
Convert float into long integer	381
Quotient of integer division.....	382
Integer division by a byte constant.....	383
Integer left shift	384
Remainder of integer division	385
Integer multiplication	386
Integer multiplication by a byte constant.....	387
Integer multiplication by 10.....	388
Integer right shift.....	389
Convert integer into double.....	390
Convert integer into float	391
Perform C switch statement on char.....	392
Perform C switch statement on long.....	393
Perform C switch statement	394
Function entry with argument in d and 2,x	395
Function entry with argument in d and 2,x	396
Function entry with argument in b	397
Function entry with argument in b	398
Function entry with argument in d.....	399
Function entry with argument in d.....	400
Long integer addition	401
Bitwise AND for long integers.....	402
Long integer compare.....	403
Quotient of long integer division	404
Long addition	405
Long bitwise AND	406
Quotient of long integer division in memory.....	407

Long shift left	408
Remainder of long integer division in memory.....	409
Long multiplication in memory.....	410
Long bitwise OR.....	411
Signed long shift right	412
Long subtraction	413
Quotient of unsigned long division in memory.....	414
Remainder of long unsigned integer division.....	415
Unsigned long shift right.....	416
Long bitwise exclusive OR	417
Long integer shift left.....	418
Remainder of long integer division.....	419
Multiply long integer by long integer.....	420
Negate a long integer	421
Bitwise OR with long integers	422
Long integer right shift.....	423
Long test against zero.....	424
Long integer subtraction.....	425
Convert long integer into double.....	426
Convert long integer into float	427
Quotient of unsigned long integer division.....	428
Remainder of unsigned long integer division.....	429
Unsigned long integer shift right.....	430
Bitwise exclusive OR with long integers.....	431
Compare a long integer to zero	432
Copy a structure to another.....	433
Copy a structure to another.....	434
Move stack pointer forward.....	435
Move stack pointer backward.....	436
Move stack pointer forward.....	437
Quotient of unsigned integer division	438
Convert unsigned integer into double.....	439
Convert unsigned integer into float	440
Unsigned long integer compare.....	441
Convert unsigned long integer into double.....	442
Convert unsigned long integer into float.....	443
Remainder of unsigned integer division.....	444
Unsigned integer shift right.....	445
Banked function call for the MC68HC11C0.....	446
Banked function call for the MC68HC11K4.....	447
Save bank descriptor for the MC68HC11C0.....	448
Save bank descriptor for the MC68HC11K4	449

Chapter D

Compiler Passes

The cp6811 Parser	452
Command Line Options	452
Return Status	455
Example	455
The cg6811 Code Generator	456
Command Line Options	456
Return Status	457
Example	458
The co6811 Assembly Language Optimizer	459
Command Line Options	459
Disabling Optimization	460
Return Status	460
Example	460

Preface

The *Cross Compiler User's Guide for MC68HC11* is a reference guide for programmers writing C programs for MC68HC11 micro-controller environments. It provides an overview of how the cross compiler works, and explains how to compile, assemble, link and debug programs. It also describes the programming support utilities included with the cross compiler and provides tutorial and reference information to help you configure executable images to meet specific requirements. This manual assumes that you are familiar with your host operating system and with your specific target environment.

Organization of this Manual

This manual is divided into eight chapters and four appendixes.

Chapter 1, “[Introduction](#)”, describes the basic organization of the C compiler and programming support utilities.

Chapter 2, “[Tutorial Introduction](#)”, is a series of examples that demonstrates how to compile, assemble and link a simple C program.

Chapter 3, “[Programming Environments](#)”, explains how to use the features of C for MC68HC11 to meet the requirements of your particular application. It explains how to create a runtime startup for your application, and how to write C routines that perform special tasks such as: serial I/O, direct references to hardware addresses, interrupt handling, and assembly language calls.

Chapter 4, “[*Using The Compiler*](#)”, describes the compiler options. This chapter also describes the functions in the C runtime library.

Chapter 5, “[*Using The Assembler*](#)”, describes the MC68HC11 assembler and its options. It explains the rules that your assembly language source must follow, and it documents all the directives supported by the assembler.

Chapter 6, “[*Using The Linker*](#)”, describes the linker and its options. This chapter describes in detail all the features of the linker and their use.

Chapter 7, “[*Debugging Support*](#)”, describes the support available for COSMIC's C source level cross debugger and for other debuggers or in-circuit emulators.

Chapter 8, “[*Programming Support*](#)”, describes the programming support utilities. Examples of how to use these utilities are also included.

Appendix A, “[*Compiler Error Messages*](#)”, is a list of compile time error messages that the C compiler may generate.

Appendix B, “[*Modifying Compiler Operation*](#)”, describes the “configuration file” that serves as default behaviour to the C compiler.

Appendix C, “[*MC68HC11 Machine Library*](#)”, describes the assembly language routines that provide support for the C runtime library.

Appendix D, “[*Compiler Passes*](#)”, describes the specifics of the parser, code generator and assembly language optimizer and the command line options that each accepts.

This manual also contains an Index.

CHAPTER 1

Introduction

This chapter explains how the compiler operates. It also provides a basic understanding of the compiler architecture. This chapter includes the following sections:

- Introduction
- Document Conventions
- Compiler Architecture
- Predefined Symbol
- Linking
- Programming Support Utilities
- Listings
- Optimizations
- Support for Bank Switching
- Support for ROMable Code
- Support for eeprom

Introduction

The C cross compiler targeting the MC68HC11 microcontroller reads C source files, assembly language source files, and object code files, and produces an executable file. You can request listings that show your C source interspersed with the assembly language code and object code that the compiler generates. You can also request that the compiler generate an object module that contains debugging information that can be used by COSMIC's C source level cross debugger or by other debuggers or in-circuit emulators.

You begin compilation by invoking the **cx6811** compiler driver with the specific options you need and the files to be compiled.

Document Conventions

In this documentation set, we use a number of styles and typefaces to demonstrate the syntax of various commands and to show sample text you might type at a terminal or observe in a file. The following is a list of these conventions.

Typewriter font

Used for user input/screen output. Typewriter (or courier) font is used in the text and in examples to represent what you might type at a terminal: command names, directives, switches, literal filenames, or any other text which must be typed exactly as shown. It is also used in other examples to represent what you might see on a screen or in a printed listing and to denote executables.

To distinguish it from other examples or listings, input from the user will appear in a shaded box throughout the text. Output to the terminal or to a file will appear in a line box.

For example, if you were instructed to type the compiler command that generates debugging information, it would appear as:

```
cx6811 +debug acia.c
```

Typewriter font enclosed in a shaded box indicates that this line is entered by the user at the terminal.

If, however, the text included a partial listing of the file *acia.c* ‘an example of text from a file or from output to the terminal’ then typewriter font would still be used, but would be enclosed in a line box:

```
/* defines the ACIA as a structure */
struct acia {
    char status;
    char data;
} acia @0x6000;
```

NOTE

Due to the page width limitations of this manual, a single invocation line may be represented as two or more lines. You should, however, type the invocation as one line unless otherwise directed.

Italics

Used for value substitution. *Italic* type indicates categories of items for which you must substitute appropriate values, such as arguments or hypothetical filenames. For example, if the text was demonstrating a hypothetical command line to compile and generate debugging information for any file, it might appear as:

```
cx6811 +debug file.c
```

In this example, `cx6811 +debug file.c` is shown in typewriter font because it must be typed exactly as shown. Because the filename must be specified by the user, however, *file* is shown in italics.

[Brackets]

Items enclosed in brackets are optional. For example, the line:

[*options*]

means that zero or more options may be specified because *options* appears in brackets. Conversely, the line:

options

means that one or more options must be specified because *options* is not enclosed by brackets.

As another example, the line:

```
file1.[o|h11]
```

means that one file with the extension `.o` or `.h11` may be specified, and the line:

```
file1 [ file2 . . . ]
```

means that additional files may be specified.

Conventions

All the compiler utilities share the same optional arguments syntax. They are invoked by typing a command line.

Command Line

A command line is generally composed of three major parts:

```
program_name [<flags>] <files>
```

where *<program_name>* is the name of the program to run, *<flags>* an optional series of flags, and *<files>* a series of files. Each element of a command line is usually a string separated by whitespace from all the others.

Flags

Flags are used to select options or specify parameters. Options are recognized by their first character, which is always a `-` or a `+`, followed by the name of the flag (usually a single letter). Some flags are simply *yes* or *no* indicators, but some must be followed by a value or some additional information. The value, if required, may be a character string, a single character, or an integer. The flags may be given in any order, and two or more may be combined in the same argument, so long as the second flag can't be mistaken for a value that goes with the previous one.

It is possible for each utility to display a list of accepted options by specifying the **-help** option. Each option will be displayed alphabetically on a separate line with its name and a brief description. If an option requires additional information, then the type of information is

indicated by one of the following code, displayed immediately after the option name:

Code	Type of information
*	character string
#	short integer
##	long integer
?	single character

If the code is immediately followed by the character '>', the option may be specified more than once with different values. In that case, the option name must be repeated for every specification.

For example, the options of the **chex** utility are:

```
chex [options] file
-a##    absolute file start address
-b##    address bias
-e##    entry point address
-f?     output format
-h      suppress header
+h*     specify header string
-m#     maximum data bytes per line
-n*>    output only named segments
-o*     output file name
-p      use paged address format
-pp     use paged address with mapping
-pn     use paged address in bank only
-s      output increasing addresses
-x*     exclude named segment
```

chex accepts the following distinct flags:

Flags	Function
-a	accept a long integer value
-b	accept a long integer value
-e	accept a long integer value
-f	accept a single character
-h	simply a flag indicator
+h	accept a character string
-m	accept a short integer value,
-n	accept a character string and may be repeated
-o	accept a character string
-p	simply a flag indicator
-pn	simply a flag indicator
-pp	simply a flag indicator
-s	simply a flag indicator
-x	accept a character string and may be repeated

Compiler Architecture

The C compiler consists of several programs that work together to translate your C source files to executable files and listings. **cx6811** controls the operation of these programs automatically, using the options you specify, and runs the programs described below in the order listed:

cp6811 - the C preprocessor and language parser. *cp6811* expands directives in your C source and parses the resulting text.

cg6811 - the code generator. *cg6811* accepts the output of *cp6811* and generates assembly language statements.

co6811 - the assembly language optimizer. *co6811* optimizes the assembly language code that *cg6811* generates.

ca6811 - the assembler. *ca6811* converts the assembly language output of *co6811* to a relocatable object module.

Predefined Symbol

The COSMIC compiler defines the `__CSMC__` preprocessor symbol. It expands to a numerical value whose each bit indicates if a specific option has been activated:

- bit 0: set if nowiden option specified (**+nowiden**)
- bit 1: set if single precision option specified (**+sprec**)
- bit 2: set if unsigned char option specified (**-pu**)
- bit 4: set if reverse bitfield option specified (**+rev**)
- bit 5: set if no enum optimization specified (**-pne**)

Linking

clnk combines all the object modules that make up your program with the appropriate modules from the C library. You can also build your own libraries and have the linker select files from them as well. The linker generates an executable file which, after further processing with the *chex* utility, can be downloaded and run on your target system. If you specify debugging options when you invoke **cx6811**, the compiler will generate a file that contains debugging information. You can then use the COSMIC's debugger to debug your code.

Programming Support Utilities

Once object files are produced, you run **clnk** (the linker) to produce an executable image for your target system; you can use the programming support utilities listed below to inspect the executable.

cbank - optimize the bank filling with object file. It reorganizes a object list in order to fill as completely as possible the smallest amount of banks and produces as result a text file containing the object file names in the proper order.

chex - absolute hex file generator. *chex* translates executable images produced by the linker into hexadecimal interchange formats, for use with in-circuit emulators and PROM programmers. *chex* produces the following formats:

- Motorola S-record format
- standard Intel hex format

clabs - absolute listing utility. *clabs* translates relocatable listings produced by the assembler by replacing all relocatable information by absolute information. This utility must to be used only after the linker.

clib - build and maintain object module libraries. *clib* allows you to collect related files into a single named library file for convenient storage. You use it to build and maintain object module libraries in standard library format.

cobj - object module inspector. *cobj* allows you to examine standard format executable and relocatable object files for symbol table information and to determine their size and configuration.

cv695 - [IEEE695](#) format converter. *cv695* allows you to generate IEEE695 format file. This utility must to be used only after the linker.

Listings

Several options for listings are available. If you request no listings, then error messages from the compiler are directed to your terminal, but no additional information is provided. Each error is labelled with the C source file name and line number where the error was detected.

If you request an assembly language and object code listing with interspersed C source, the compiler merges the C source as comments among the assembly language statements and lines of object code that it generates. Unless you specify otherwise, the error messages are still written to your terminal. Your listing is the listing output from the assembler.

Optimizations

The C cross compiler performs a number of compile time and optimizations that help make your application smaller and faster:

- The compiler supports five programming models, allowing you to generate fully optimized code for your target system.

- The compiler uses register **d** to hold the first argument of a function call if:
 - 1) the function does not return a structure or a double, and
 - 2) the first argument is derived from one of the following types:
 - char,*
 - short,*
 - int, long,*
 - float,*
 - pointer to...,*
 - or array of...*
- The compiler will perform arithmetic operations in 8-bit precision if the operands are 8-bit.
- The compiler eliminates unreachable code.
- Branch shortening logic chooses the smallest possible jump/branch instructions. Jumps to jumps and jumps over jumps are eliminated as well.
- Integer and float constant expressions are folded at compile time.
- Redundant load and store operations are removed.
- **enum** is large enough to represent all of its declared values, each of which is given a name. The names of **enum** values occupy the same space as type definitions, functions and object names. The compiler provides the ability to declare an **enum** using the smallest type char, int or long:
- The compiler performs multiplication by powers of two as faster shift instructions.
- An optimized switch statement produces combinations of tests and branches, jump tables for closely spaced case labels, a scan table for a small group of loosely spaced case labels, or a sorted table for an efficient search.

- The functions in the C library are packaged in three separate libraries; one of them is built without floating point support. If your application does not perform floating point calculations, you can decrease its size and increase its runtime efficiency by linking with the non-floating-point version of the modules needed.

Support for Bank Switching

The compiler supports bank switching for **code only**, using the internal window mechanism provided by the **MC68HC11K4** processor, or using any external user provided mechanism. Bank switching is supported via:

- **@far** type qualifier to describe a function relocated in a different bank. Calling such a function implies a special calling sequence, and a special return sequence. Such a function has to be defined **@far** and referenced as **@far** in all the files using it.
- Linker options are required to ensure the proper boundaries, alignment for physical and logical addresses computations.

NOTE

*The routines used to access the window registers are located in the library files **wcalc.s**, **wcalc.s** and **wsetup.s** and have been written using the default register address 0. These files must be modified if using a different base address*

Support for ROMable Code

The compiler provides the following features to support ROMable code production. See Chapter 3 for more information.

- Referencing of absolute hardware addresses;
- Control of the MC68HC11 interrupt system;
- Automatic data initialization;
- User configurable runtime startup file;

- Support for mixing C and assembly language code; and
- User configurable executable images suitable for direct input to a PROM programmer or for direct downloading to a target system.

Support for eeprom

The compiler provides the following features to support **eeprom** handling:

- **@eeprom** type qualifier to describe a variable as an *eeprom* location. The compiler generates special sequences when the variable is modified.
- Library functions for erasure, initialization and copy of *eeprom* locations.

NOTE

*The basic routine to program an eeprom byte is located in the library file **eeprom.s** and has been written using the default input/output address **0x1000**. This file must be modified if using a different base address.*

For information on using the compiler, see [Chapter 4](#).

For information on using the assembler, see [Chapter 5](#).

For information on using the linker, see [Chapter 6](#).

For information on debugging support, see [Chapter 7](#).

For information on using the programming utilities, see [Chapter 8](#).

For information on the compiler passes, see [Appendix D](#).

CHAPTER 2

Tutorial Introduction

This chapter will demonstrate, step by step, how to compile, assemble and link the example program **acia.c**, which is included on your distribution media. Although this tutorial cannot show all the topics relevant to the COSMIC tools, it will demonstrate the basics of using the compiler for the most common applications.

In this tutorial you will find information on the following topics:

- [Default Compiler Operation](#)
- [Compiling and Linking](#)
- [Linking Your Application](#)
- [Generating Automatic Data Initialization](#)
- [Specifying Command Line Options](#)

Acia.c, Example file

The following is a listing of *acia.c*. This C source file is copied during the installation of the compiler:

```

/* EXAMPLE PROGRAM WITH INTERRUPT HANDLING
 */
#include <io.h>

#define SIZE      512          /* buffer size */
#define TDRE      0x80        /* transmit ready bit */

/*   Authorize interrupts. */
#define cli() _asm("cli\n")

/*   Some variables */
char buffer[SIZE];           /* reception buffer */
char * ptlec;                /* read pointer */
char * ptecr;                /* write pointer */

/*   Character reception.
 *   Loops until a character is received.
 */
char getch(void)
{
    char c;                  /* character to be returned */

    while (ptlec == ptecr) /* equal pointers => loop */
        ;

    c = *ptlec++;            /* get the received char */
    if (ptlec >= &buffer[SIZE]) /* put in in buffer */
        ptlec = buffer;
    return (c);
}

/*   Send a char to the SCI.
 */
void outch(char c)
{
    while (!(SCSR & TDRE)) /* wait for READY */
        ;

    SCDR = c;                /* send it */
}

```

```
/*    Character reception routine.
 *    This routine is called on interrupt.
 *    It puts the received char in the buffer.
 */
@interrupt void recepth(void)
{
    SCSR;                      /* clear interrupt */
    *ptecr++ = SCDR;           /* get the char */
    if (ptecr >= &buffer[SIZE]) /* put it in buffer */
        ptecr = buffer;
}

/*    Main program.
 *    Sets up the SCI and starts an infinite loop
 *    of receive transmit.
 */
void main(void)
{
    ptecr = ptlec = buffer; /* initialize pointers */
    BAUD = 0x30;             /* initialize SCI */
    SCCR2 = 0x2c;            /* parameters for interrupt */
    cli();                   /* authorize interrupts */
    for (;;)                 /* loop */
        outch(getch());      /* get and put a char */
}
```

Default Compiler Operation

By default, the compiler compiles and assembles your program. You may then link object files using **clnk** to create an executable program.

As it processes the command line, **cx6811** echoes the name of each input file to the standard output file (your terminal screen by default). You can change the amount of information the compiler sends to your terminal screen using command line options, as described later.

According to the options you will use, the following files, recognized by the COSMIC naming conventions, will be generated:

file.s	Assembler source module
file.o	Relocatable object module
file.h11	input (<i>e.g.</i> libraries) or output (<i>e.g.</i> absolute executable) file for the linker

Compiling and Linking

To compile and assemble *acia.c* using default options, type:

```
cx6811 acia.c
```

The compiler writes the name of the input file it processes:

```
acia.c:
```

The result of the compilation process is an object module named *acia.o* produced by the assembler. We will, now, show you how to use the different components.

Step 1: Compiling

The first step consists in compiling the C source file and producing an assembly language file named **acia.s**.

```
cx6811 -s acia.c
```

The **-s** option directs **cx6811** to stop after having produced the assembly file *acia.s*. You can then edit this file with your favorite editor. You can also visualize it with the appropriate system command (*type*, *cat*, *more*,...). For example under MS/DOS you would type:

```
type acia.s
```

If you wish to get an interspersed C and assembly language file, you should type:

```
cx6811 -l acia.c
```

The **-l** option directs the compiler to produce an assembly language file with C source line interspersed in it. Please note that the C source lines are commented in the assembly language file: they start with **;**.

As you use the C compiler, you may find it useful to see the various actions taken by the compiler and to verify the options you selected.

The **-v** option, known as verbose mode, instructs the C compiler to display all of its actions. For example if you type:

```
cx6811 -v -s acia.c
```

the display will look like something similar to the following:

```
acia.c:
  cp6811 -o ctempc.cx1 -i\cx\h6811 -u acia.c
  cg6811 -o ctempc.cx2 ctempc.cx1
  co6811 -o acia.s ctempc.cx2
```

The compiler runs each pass:

cp6811	the C parser
cg6811	the assembly code generator
co6811	the optimizer

For more information, see **Appendix D**, “[Compiler Passes](#)”.

Step 2: Assembling

The second step of the compilation is to assemble the code previously produced. The relocatable object file produced is *acia.o*.

```
cx6811 acia.s
```

or

```
ca6811 -i\cx\h6811 acia.s
```

if you want to use directly the macro cross assembler.

The cross assembler can provide, when necessary, listings, symbol table, cross reference and more. The following command will generate a listing file named *acia.ls* that will also contain a cross reference:

```
ca6811 -c -l acia.s
```

For more information, see **Chapter 5**, “[Using The Assembler](#)”.

Step 3: Linking

This step consists in linking relocatable files, also referred to as object modules, produced by the compiler or by the assembler (<files>.o) into an absolute executable file: **acia.h11** in our example. Code and data sections will be located at absolute memory addresses. The linker is used with a command file (*acia.lkf* in this example).

An application that uses one or more object module(s) may require several sections (code, data, interrupt vectors, etc.,...) located at different addresses. Each object module contains several sections. The compiler creates the following sections:

Type	Description
.text	code (or program) section (e.g. ROM)
.const	constant and literal data (e.g. ROM)
.data	all static initialized data (e.g. RAM)
.bss	all non initialized data (e.g. RAM)
.bsct	all data in the first 256 bytes (see @dir in chapter 3), also called zero page

In our example, and in the test file provided with the compiler, the *acia.lkf* file contains the following information:

```

1 # LINK COMMAND FILE FOR TEST PROGRAM
2 # Copyright (c) 1995 by COSMIC Software
3 #
4 +seg .text -b 0xe000 -n.text# program start address
5 +seg .const -a .text          # constants after program
6 +seg .data -b 0x2000          # data start address
7 crts.o                       # startup routine
8 acia.o                       # application program
9 \cx\lib\libi.h11             # C library (if needed)
10 \cx\lib\libm.h11            # machine library
11 +seg .const -b0xffd6         # vectors start address
12 vector.o                    # interrupt vectors file
13 +def __memory=@.bss          # symbol used by startup
14 +def __stack=0x00ff          # stack pointer initial value

```

You can create your own link command file by modifying the one provided with the compiler.

Here is the explanation of the lines in *acia.lkf*:

lines 1 to 3: These are comment lines. Each line can include comments. They must be prefixed by the “#” character.

line 4: `+seg .text -b0xe000 -n.text` creates a text (code) segment located at hex address `e000`, and sets the segment name to `.text`.

line 5: `+seg .const -a.text` creates a constant segment located after the previous text segment.

line 6: `+seg .data -b0x2000` creates a data segment located at hex address `2000`.

line 7: `crt0.o` runtime startup code. It will be located at `0xe000` in the text segment.

line 8: `acia.o`, the file that constitutes your application. It follows the startup routine for code and data.

line 9: `libi.h11` the integer library to resolve references.

line 10: `libm.h11` the machine library to resolve references.

line 11: `+seg .const -b0xffd6` creates a new constant segment located at hex address `ffd6`.

line 12: `vectors.o` interrupt vectors file.

line 13: `+def __memory=@.bss` defines a symbol `__memory` equal to the value of the current address in the `.bss` segment. This is used to get the address of the end of the `bss`. The symbol `__memory` is used by the startup routine to reset the `bss`.

line 14: `+def __stack=0x00ff` defines a symbol `__stack` equal to the absolute value `00ff` (hex value). The symbol `__stack` is used by the startup routine to initialize the stack pointer.

By default, and in our example, the *.bss* segment follows the *.data* segment.

The *crt0.o* file contains the runtime startup that performs the following operations:

- initialize the *bss*, if any
- initialize the stack pointer
- call *main()* or any other chosen entry point.

For more information, see “[Modifying the Runtime Startup](#)” in **Chapter 3**, “*Programming Environments*”.

After you have modified the linker command file, you can link by typing:

```
clnk -o acia.h11 acia.lkf
```

For more information, see **Chapter 6**, “[Using The Linker](#)”.

Step 4: Generating S-Records file

Although *acia.h11* is an executable image, it may not be in the correct format to be loaded on your target. Use the **chex** utility to translate the format produced by the linker into standard formats. To translate *acia.h11* to *Motorola standard S-record* format:

```
chex acia.h11 > acia.hex
```

or

```
chex -o acia.hex acia.h11
```

acia.hex is now an executable image in *Motorola S-record* format and is ready to be loaded in your target system.

For more information, see “[The chex Utility](#)” in **Chapter 8**.

Linking Your Application

You can create as many *text*, *data* and *bss* segments as your application requires. For example, assume we have one *bss*, two *data* and two *text* segments. Our link command file will look like:

```
+seg .bsct -b0x0          # zpage start address
var_zpage.o              # zpage variables file
+seg .text -b 0xe000 -n .text # program start address
+seg .const -a .text      # constants follow program
+seg .data -b 0x2000       # data start address
+seg .bss -b 0x2500        # bss start address
crt.s.o                  # startup routine
acia.o                   # main program
module1.o                # application program
+seg .text -b 0xf000       # start new text section
module2.o                 # application program
module3.o                 # application program
\cx\lib\libi.h11          # C library (if needed)
\cx\lib\libm.h11          # machine library
+seg .const -b0xffd6      # vectors start address
vector.o                  # interrupt vectors
+def __memory=@.bss       # symbol used by startup
+def __stack=0x00ff       # stack pointer initial value
```

In this example the linker will locate and merge *crt.s.o*, *acia.o* and *module1.o* in a *text* segment at **0xe000** immediately followed by a *constant* segment, a *data* segment at **0x2000** and a *bss* segment, if needed at **0x2500**. *zero page* variables will be located at **0x0**. The rest of the application, *module2.o* and *module3.o* and the libraries will be located and merged in a new *text* segment at **0xf000** then the interrupt vectors *vector.o* in a *constant* segment at **0xffd6**.

For more information about the linker, see **Chapter 6**, “[Using The Linker](#)”.

Generating Automatic Data Initialization

Usually, in embedded applications, your program must reside in ROM.

This is not an issue when your application contains code and read-only data (such as string or const variables). All you have to do is to burn a PROM with the correct values and plug it into your application board.

The problem comes up when your application uses initial data values that you have defined with initialized static data. These static data values must reside in RAM.

There are two types of static data initializations:

- 1) data that is explicitly initialized to a non-zero value:

```
char var1 = 25;
```

which is generated into the **.data** section and

- 2) data that is explicitly initialized to zero or left uninitialized:

```
char var2;
```

which is generated into the **.bss** section.

There is one exception to the above rules when you declare data that will be located in the **zero page**, using the **@dir** type qualifier. In this case, the data is generated into the **.bsct** section.

The first method to ensure that these values are correct consists in adding code in your application that reinitializes them from a copy that you have created and located in ROM, at each restart of the application.

The second method is to use the **crtsi.h11** start-up file:

- 1) that defines a symbol that will force the linker to create a copy of the initialized RAM in ROM
- 2) and that will do the copy from ROM to RAM

The following link file demonstrates how to achieve automatic data initialization.

```
+seg .text -b 0xe000 -n .text # program start address
+seg .const -a .text          # constants follow program
+seg .bsct -b 0 -m 0x100      # zpage start address
+seg .data -b0x2000           # data start address
\cx\lib\crtssi.h11            # startup with auto-init
acia.o                        # main program
module1.o                     # module program
\cx\lib\libi.h11              # C library (if needed)
\cx\lib\libm.h11              # machine library
+def __memory=@.bss           # symbol used by library
```

In the above example, the *text* segment is located at address 0xe000, the *data* segment is located at address 0x2000, immediately followed by the *bss* segment that contains uninitialized data. The copy of the initialized data in ROM will follow the descriptor created by the linker after the code segment.

In case of multiple code and data segments, a link command file could be:

```
+seg .text -b 0xe000 -n .text # program start address
+seg .const -a .text          # constants follow program
+seg .bsct -b 0 -m 0x100      # zpage start address
+seg .data -b0x2000           # data start address
\cx\lib\crtssi.h11            # startup with auto-init
acia.o                        # main program
module1.o                     # module program
+seg .text -b0xf000            # new code segment
module2.o                     # module program
module3.o                     # module program
\cx\lib\libi.h11              # C library (if needed)
\cx\lib\libm.h11              # machine library
+seg .const -b 0xffd6         # vectors start address
vector.o                      # interrupt vectors
+def __memory=@.bss           # symbol used by startup
+def __stack=0x00ff           # stack pointer initial value
```

or

```
+seg .text -b 0xe000 -n .text # program start address
+seg .const -a .text          # constants follow program
```

```

+seg .bsct -b 0 -m 0x100      # zpage start address
+seg .data -b0x1000          # data start address
\cx\lib\crtsi.h11          # startup with auto-init
acia.o                      # main program
module1.o                  # module program
+seg .text -b0xf000 it      # sets the section attribute
module2.o                  # module program
module3.o                  # module program
\cx\lib\libi.h11           # C library (if needed)
\cx\lib\libm.h11           # machine library
+seg .const -b 0xffd6       # vectors start address
vector.o                   # interrupt vectors
+def __memory=@.bss         # symbol used by startup
+def __stack=0x00ff        # stack pointer initial value

```

In the first case, the initialized data will be located after the **first** code segment. In the second case, the **-it** option instructs the linker to locate the initialized data **after** the segment marked with this flag. The initialized data will be located after the second code segment located at address 0xf000.

For more information, see “[Initializing data in RAM](#)” in **Chapter 3** and “[Automatic Data Initialization](#)” in **Chapter 6**.

Specifying Command Line Options

You specify command line options to **cx6811** to control the compilation process.

To compile and produce a relocatable file named *acia.o*, type:

```
cx6811 acia.c
```

The **-v** option instructs the compiler driver to echo the name and options of each program it calls. The **-l** option instructs the compiler driver to create a mixed listing of C code and assembly language code in the file *acia.ls*.

To perform the operations described above, enter the command:

```
cx6811 -v -l acia.c
```


When the compiler exits, the following files are left in your current directory:

- the C source file **acia.c**
- the C and assembly language listing **acia.ls**
- the object module **acia.o**

It is possible to locate listings and object files in specified directories if they are different from the current one, by using respectively the **-cl** and **-co** options:

```
cx6811 -cl\mylist -co\myobj -l acia.c
```

This command will compile the *acia.c* file, create a listing named *acia.ls* in the *\mylist* directory and an object file named *acia.o* in the *\myobj* directory.

cx6811 allows you to compile more than one file. The input files can be C source files or assembly source files. You can also mix all of these files.

If your application is composed with the following files: two C source files and one assembly source file, you would type:

```
cx6811 -v start.s acia.c getchar.c
```

This command will assemble the *start.s* file, and compile the two C source files.

See **Chapter 4**, “[Using The Compiler](#)” for information on these and other command line options.

CHAPTER 3

Programming Environments

This chapter explains how to use the COSMIC program development system to perform special tasks required by various MC68HC11 applications.

Introduction

The 68HC11 COSMIC compiler is an ANSI C compiler that offers several extensions which support special requirements of embedded systems programmers. This chapter provides details about:

- [Modifying the Runtime Startup](#)
- [Initializing data in RAM](#)
- [Performing Input/Output in C](#)
- [The const and volatile Type Qualifiers](#)
- [Placing Data Objects in The Bss Section](#)
- [Placing Data Objects in The Zero Page Section](#)
- [Placing Data Objects in the EEPROM Space](#)
- [Redefining Sections](#)
- [Stack Usage](#)
- [Inserting Inline Assembly Instructions](#)
- [Referencing Absolute Addresses](#)
- [Writing Interrupt Handlers](#)
- [Placing Addresses in Interrupt Vectors](#)
- [Accessing Internal Registers](#)
- [Fast Function Calls](#)
- [Interfacing C to Assembly Language](#)
- [Calling a Bank Switched Function](#)
- [Register Usage](#)
- [Heap Management Control with the C Compiler](#)
- [Data Representation](#)

Modifying the Runtime Startup

The runtime startup module performs many important functions to establish a runtime environment for C. The runtime startup file included with the standard distribution provides the following:

- Initialization of the **bss** section if any,
- ROM into RAM copy if required,
- Initialization of the stack pointer,
- `_main` or other program entry point call, and
- An exit sequence to return from the C environment. Most users must modify the exit sequence provided to meet the needs of their specific execution environment.

The following is a listing of the standard runtime startup file **crtsh11** included on your distribution media. It does not perform automatic data initialization. A special startup program is provided, **crtshi11**, which is used instead of *crtsh11* when you need automatic data initialization. The runtime startup file can be placed anywhere in memory. Usually, the startup will be “linked” with the **RESET** interrupt, and the startup file may be at any convenient location.

Description of Runtime Startup Code

```

1  ; C STARTUP FOR MC68HC11
2  ; Copyright (c) 1995 by COSMIC Software
3  ;
4      xdef  _exit, __stext
5      xref  _main, __memory, __stack
6  ;
7      switch.bss
8  __sbss:
9      switch.text
10  __stext:
11      clra                ; reset the bss
12      ldx  #__sbss        ; start of bss
13      bra  loop           ; start loop
14  zbcl:
15      staa 0,x            ; clear byte
16      inx                ; next byte
17  loop:
18      cpx  #__memory      ; up to the end
19      bne  zbcl           ; and loop

```

```
20    lds    #__stack    ; initialize stack pointer
21    jsr    _main       ; execute main
22 _exit:
23    bra    _exit       ; and stay here
24 ;
25    end
```

_main is the entry point into the user C program.

__memory is an external symbol defined by the linker as the end of the **bss** section. The start of the *bss* section is marked by the local symbol **_sbss**.

__stack is an external symbol defined by the linker as an absolute value.

Lines 11 to 19 reset the *bss* section.

Line 20 sets the stack pointer. You may have to modify it to meet the needs of your application.

Line 21 calls *main()* in the user's C program.

Lines 22 to 23 trap a return from *main()*. If your application must return to a monitor, for example, you must modify this line.

Initializing data in RAM

If you have initialized static variables, which are located in **RAM**, you need to perform their initialization before you start your C program. The **clnk** linker will take care of that: it moves the initialized data segments after the **first** text segment, or the one you have selected with the **-it** option, and creates a descriptor giving the starting address, destination and size of each segment.

The table thus created and the copy of the **RAM** are located in **ROM** by the linker, and used to do the initialization. An example of how to do this is provided in the **crtis.s** file located in the headers subdirectory.

```
;      C STARTUP FOR MC68HC11
;      WITH AUTOMATIC DATA INITIALISATION
;      Copyright (c) 1995 by COSMIC Software
;
;      xdef __exit, __stext
;      xref __main, __memory, __idesc__, __stack
;
;      switch.bss
__sbss:
svx:
    dc.w 0
sve:
    dc.w 0
;
;      switch.text
__stext:
    ldx #__idesc__ ; descriptor address
    ldy 0,x        ; start address of prom data
    inx            ; skip address
    inx
ibcl:
    ldaa 0,x        ; test flag byte
    beq  zbss       ; no more segment
    bpl  nobk       ; skip bank
    inx            ; info
    inx            ; if any
nobk:
    stx  svx        ; save pointer
    ldd  3,x        ; end address
    std  sve        ; in memory
    ldx  1,x        ; destination address
dbcl:
```

```

        ldab 0,y          ; copy from prom
        stab 0,x          ; to ram
        inx              ; next byte
        iny
        cpy sve          ; last one ?
        bne dbcl          ; no, loop again
        ldx svx          ; reload pointer to desc
        ldab #5           ; size of one entry
        abx              ; point to next entry
        bra ibcl          ; and loop
zbss:
        ldx #__sbss      ; start of bss
        bra loop          ; start loop
zbcl:
        staa 0,x          ; clear byte
        inx              ; next byte
loop:
        cpx #__memory    ; up to the end
        bne zbcl          ; and loop
        lds #__stack      ; initialize stack pointer
        jsr _main          ; execute main
_exit:
        bra _exit          ; and stay here
;
        end

```

crtsi.s performs the same function as described with the *crt.s*, but with one additional step. Lines (marked in bold) in *crtsi.s* include code to copy the contents of initialized static data, which has been placed in the text section by the linker, to the desired location in RAM.

For more information, see **Chapter 2**, “[Generating Automatic Data Initialization](#)” and **Chapter 6**, “[Automatic Data Initialization](#)”.

The const and volatile Type Qualifiers

You can add the type qualifiers **const** and **volatile** to any base type or pointer type attribute.

Volatile types are useful for declaring data objects that appear to be in conventional storage but are actually represented in machine registers with special properties. You use the type qualifier *volatile* to declare memory mapped input/output control registers, shared data objects, and data objects accessed by signal handlers. The compiler will not optimize references to *volatile* data.

An expression that stores a value in a data object of *volatile* type stores the value immediately. An expression that accesses a value in a data object of *volatile* type obtains the stored value for each access. Your program will not reuse the value accessed earlier from a data object of *volatile* type.

NOTE

*The **volatile** keyword must be used for any data object (variables) that can be modified outside of the normal flow of the function. Without the volatile keyword, all data objects are subject to normal redundant code removal optimizations. Volatile **MUST** be used for the following conditions:*

*1) all data objects or variables associated with a memory mapped hardware register e.g. **volatile char PORTD @0x1008;***

2) all global variable that can be modified (written to) by an interrupt service routine either directly or indirectly. e.g. a global variable used as a counter in an interrupt service routine.

You use **const** to declare data objects whose stored values you do not intend to alter during execution of your program. You can therefore place data objects of **const** type in ROM or in write protected program segments. The cross compiler generates an error message if it encounters an expression that alters the value stored in a **const** data object.

If you declare a static data object of *const* type at either file level or at block level, you may specify its stored value by writing a data initializer. The compiler determines its stored value from its data initializer before program startup, and the stored value continues to exist unchanged until program termination. If you specify no data initializer, the stored value is zero. If you declare a data object of *const* type at argument level, you tell the compiler that your program will not alter the value stored in that argument in the related function. If you declare a data object of *const* type and dynamic lifetime at block level, you must specify its stored value by writing a data initializer. If you specify no data initializer, the stored value is undefined.

You may specify *const* and *volatile* together, in either order. A *const volatile* data object could be a Read-only status register, or a variable whose value may be set by another program.

Examples of data objects declared with type qualifiers are:

```
char * const x;      /* const pointer to char */
int * volatile y;    /* volatile pointer to int */
const float pi = 355.0 / 113.0; /* pi is never changed */
```

Performing Input/Output in C

You perform input and output in C by using the C library functions *getchar*, *gets*, *printf*, *putchar*, *puts*, *sprintf*, *vprintf* and *vsprintf*. They are described in chapter 4.

The C source code for these and all other C library functions is included with the distribution, so that you can modify them to meet your specific needs. Note that all input/output performed by C library functions is supported by underlying calls to *getchar* and *putchar*. These two functions provide access to all input/output library functions. The library is built in such a way that you need only modify *getchar* and *putchar*, the rest of the library is independent of the runtime environment.

Function definitions for *getchar* and *putchar* are:

```
char getchar(void);
char putchar(char c);
```

Placing Data Objects in The Bss Section

The compiler automatically reserves space for uninitialized data object. All such data are placed in the **.bss** section. All initialized static data are placed in the **.data** section. The **bss** section is located, by default, after the **data** section by the linker.

The run-time startup files, **crt0.s** and **crti.s**, contain code which initializes the **bss** section space to zero.

The compiler provides a special option, **+nobss**, which forces uninitialized data to be explicitly located in the **.data** section. In such a case, these variables are considered as being explicitly initialized to zero.

Placing Data Objects in The Zero Page Section

The **zero page** section, or “**zpage**”, refers to data that is accessed in the internal memory of the MC68HC11 chip and may be accessed with one byte address; this is the first 256 bytes of memory. Placing initialized data objects in the **zero page** section optimizes code size and execution time.

To place data objects selectively into the *zero page* section, use the type qualifier **@dir** when you declare the data object. For example:

```
@dir char var;
```

A data object declared this way will be located into the section **.bsct**. An external object name is published via a **xref.b** declaration at the assembly language level.

To place data objects into the *zero page* on a file basis, you use the **#pragma** directive of the compiler. The compiler directive:

```
#pragma space [] @dir
```

instructs the compiler to place all data objects of storage class **extern** or **static** into the *zero page* for the current unit of compilation (usually a file). The section must end with a **#pragma space []**.

The compiler provides a special option, **+zpage**, which forces the **#pragma** directive described above for all files compiled with that option.

NOTE

The code generator does not check for zero page overflow.

Setting Zero Page Size

You can define the maximum size of the *zero page* section of your application at link time by specifying the following options on the linker command line:

```
+seg .bsct -m##
```

where **##** represents the size of the *zero page* section in bytes. Note that the size of the zero page section can never exceed **256 bytes**.

Redefining Sections

The compiler uses by default predefined sections to output the various component of a C program. The default sections are:

Section	Description
.text	executable code
.const	text string and constants
.data	initialized variables
.bss	uninitialized variables
.bsct	any variable in zero page (@dir)
.eeprom	any variable in eeprom (@eeprom)

It is possible to redirect any of these components to any user defined section by using the following pragma definition:

```
#pragma section <attribute> <qualified_name>
```

where *<attribute>* is either **empty** or one of the following sequences:

const
@dir
@eeprom

and *<qualified_name>* is a section *name* enclosed as follows:

(name) - parenthesis indicating a code section
[name] - square brackets indicating uninitialized data
{name} - curly braces indicating initialized data

A section name is a plain C identifier which *does not* begin with a dot character, and which is no longer than 13 characters. The compiler will prefix automatically the section name with a dot character when passing this information to the assembler. It is possible to switch back to the default sections by omitting the section name in the *<qualified_name>* sequence.

Each pragma directive starts redirecting the selected component from the next declarations. Redefining the *bss* section forces the compiler to produce the memory definitions for all the previous *bss* declarations before to switch to the new section.

The following directives:

```
#pragma section (code)
#pragma section const {string}
#pragma section [udata]
#pragma section {idata}
#pragma section @dir {zpage}
#pragma section @eeprom {e2prom}
```

redefine the default sections (or the previous one) as following:

- executable code is redirected to section **.code**
- strings and constants are redirected to section **.string**
- uninitialized variables are redirected to section **.udata**
- initialized data are redirected to section **.idata**
- zero page variables are redirected to section **.zpage**
- eeprom variables are redirected to section **.e2prom**

Note that `{name}` and `[name]` are equivalent for constant, zero page and eeprom sections as they are all considered as initialized.

The following directive:

```
#pragma section ( )
```

switches back the code section to the default section `.text`.

Fast Function Calls

When the compiler is invoked with the `+fast` option, the entry and return sequences are produced with `inline` code instead of machine library function calls. This produces larger but faster code. To produce selectively such a code for a function, use the type `@fast` when you declare the function. A function entry sequence will look like:

```
pshx
tsx
xgdx
add #<-#>
xgdx
txs
```

A function return sequence will look like:

```
tsx
xgdx
add #<#>
xgdx
txs
puls
rts
```

In all cases, the compiler will shorten these sequences if the size of the stack frame is small enough, by using a combination of `pshx` and `des` instructions to open the stack frame, and a combination of `puls` and `ins` instructions to close the stack frame.

Placing Data Objects in the EEPROM Space

The compiler allows to define a variable as an **eeeprom** location, using the type qualifier **@eeeprom**. This causes the compiler to produce special code when such a variable is modified. When the compiler detects a write to an *eeeprom* location, it calls a machine library function which performs the actual write. An example of such a definition is:

```
@eeeprom char var;
```

To place all data objects from a file into *eeeprom*, you can use the **#pragma** directive of the compiler. The directive

```
#pragma space [] @eeeprom
```

instructs the compiler to treat all *extern* and *static* data in the current file as *eeeprom* locations. The section must end with a **#pragma space[]**.

NOTE

*If you change the location of the default 6811 register map from 0x1000 to some other address, you must also change the address in the [eeeprom.s](#) source file, which is in object form in the [libm.h11](#). The source is located in the *libm* sub-directory.*

The compiler allocates **@eeeprom** variables in a separate section named **.eeeprom**, which will be located at link time. The linker directive:

```
+seg .eeeprom -b0xb600 -m512  
var_eeeprom.o
```

will create a segment located at address **0xb600**, with a maximum size of 512 bytes.

NOTE

*The code generator cannot check if the final address of an **@eeeprom** object will be valid after linkage.*

Stack Usage

By default, a function uses the stack for its arguments and local variables. When the stack size is too small, it is possible to instruct the compiler not to use the stack, but a static memory area for arguments and local variables. The `@nostack` modifier is used on a function declaration to indicate that this function does not use the stack. The code generator can be configured to use several different mechanisms. Different behaviours are selected by the `+st0`, `+st1`, `+st2` or `+st3` flags on the compiler command line. These options are referred to as the **static models**. Note that it is possible to force all functions to use the `@nostack` modifier with the compiler option `+nostk`.

Static Model 0

Each function declared with the `@nostack` modifier, places its arguments and local variables in a **private** memory area allocated in the `.bss` section. This memory area will not be used by any other function, and thus the only restriction to that model is that such a function should not call itself recursively, either directly or indirectly.

Static Model 1

Each function declared with the `@nostack` modifier, places its arguments and local variables in a **private** memory area allocated in the `.bsct` section. This memory area will not be used by any other function, and thus the only restriction to that model is that such a function should not call itself recursively, either directly or indirectly. The linker should control the `.bsct` size (`-m` option).

Static Model 2

Each function declared with the `@nostack` modifier, places its arguments and local variables in a **shared** memory area allocated in the `.bss` section. The linker will group all the shared areas declared by all such functions in the application, and will allocate these areas in order to minimize the total size, by overlapping areas corresponding to exclusive functions. Two functions are exclusive if they don't call each other directly or indirectly. Recursive functions are still not allowed.

Static Model 3

Each function declared with the **@nostack** modifier, places its arguments and local variables in a **shared** memory area allocated in the **.bsct** section. The linker will group all the shared areas declared by all such functions in the application, and will allocate these areas in order to minimize the total size, by overlapping areas corresponding to exclusive functions. Two functions are exclusive if they don't call each other directly or indirectly. Recursive functions are still not allowed. The linker should control the **.bsct** size (**-m** option).

NOTE

*When using **static models 2 or 3**, the compiler reserves the corresponding memory areas, but does not allocate them. The linker will allocate all these areas after having rearranged them in order to use the smallest amount of memory possible. In order to perform this rearrangement, the linker needs information about all the function calls in the application. This means that even if all the functions are not declared with the **@nostack** modifier, all the source files need to be compiled with the **+st2** or **+st3** option. Otherwise, the linker may produce incorrect overlaid*

Referencing Absolute Addresses

This C compiler allows you to read from and write to absolute addresses, and to assign an absolute address to a function entry point or to a data object. You can give a memory location a symbolic name and associated type, and use it as you would do with any C identifier. This feature is useful for accessing memory mapped I/O ports or for calling functions at known addresses in ROM.

References to absolute addresses have the general form **@<address>**, where **<address>** is a valid memory location in your environment. For example, to associate an I/O port at address **0x0** with the identifier name **PORTA**, write a definition of the form:

```
char PORTA @0x0;
```

where **@0x0** indicates an absolute address specification and not a data initializer. Since input/output on the MC68HC11 architecture is memory mapped, performing I/O in this way is equivalent to writing in any given location in memory.

To use the I/O port in your application, write:

```
char c;  
c = PORTA; /* to read from input port */  
PORTA = c; /* to write to output port */
```

Another solution is to use a **#define** directive with a cast to the type of the object being accessed, such as:

```
#define PORTA *(char *)0x0
```

which is both inelegant and confusing. The COSMIC implementation is more efficient and easier to use, at the cost of a slight loss in portability. Note that COSMIC C does support the pointer and **#define** methods of implementing I/O access.

It is also possible to define structures at absolute addresses. For example, one can write:

```
struct acia  
{  
    char status;  
    char data;  
}          acia
```

Using this declaration, references to **acia.status** will refer to memory location **0x6000** and **acia.data** will refer to memory location **0x6001**. This is very useful if you are building your own custom I/O hardware that must reside at some location in the 68HC11 memory map.

Such a declaration does not reserve any space in memory. The compiler still creates a label, using an *equate* definition, in order to reference the C object symbolically. This symbol is made *public* to allow external usage from any other file.

Accessing Internal Registers

The type modifier **@port** may be used on a data object in conjunction with an absolute address to improve access to an internal register. These input-output registers are seen as memory locations, but bit instructions are inoperative on extended addressing mode. The **@port** type modifier instructs the compiler to load the base address indirectly, allowing efficient bit instructions to be used. When the absolute address is specified, the base address loaded is obtained from the upper bits of the full address (0x1000 for an address equal to 0x1021). The **PORTB** register may be declared:

```
@port char PORTB @0x1004;
```

The **@port** modifier may be omitted when the register is accessed as bytes rather than bits.

All registers are declared in the **io.h** file provided with the compiler. This file should be included by a:

```
#include <io.h>
```

in each file using the input-output registers. Five separate files **ioc0.h**, **iod3.h**, **iof1.h**, **iok4.h** and **ion4.h** are provided for the special **68HC11C0**, **68HC11D3/D0**, **68HC11F1**, **68HC11K4** and **68HC11N4** processors. They do not use the same set of registers than the standard family.

All the register names are defined by assembly *equates* which are made *public*. This allows any assembler source to use directly the input-output register names by defining them with an *xref* directive. All those definitions are already provided in the **io.s** files which may be included in an assembly source by a:

```
include "io.s"
```

All these header files assume a default location for the input-output registers depending on the actual target. This default value may be changed by defining the C symbol `_BASE` by a `#define` directive before the header file `#include`:

```
#define _BASE 0
#include <io.h>
```

The default value of `0x1000` for the register starting address as defined by the file `<io.h>` is changed to `0`.

NOTE

The `@port` modifier is an extension to the ANSI standard.

Note that the compiler will access to these registers as standard variables. In some case of reading or writing some “*int*” registers, you should declare an `union` (with two char and one int) instead of using directly the I/O register.

Inserting Inline Assembly Instructions

The compiler features two ways to insert assembly instructions in a C file. The first method uses `#pragma` directives to enclose assembly instructions. The second method uses a special function call to insert assembly instructions. The first one is more convenient for large sequences but does not provide any connection with C object. The second one is more convenient to interface with C objects but is more limited regarding the code length.

Inlining with pragmas

The compiler accepts the following pragma sequences to start and finish assembly instruction blocks:

Directive	Description
<code>#pragma asm</code>	start assembler block
<code>#pragma endasm</code>	end assembler block

The compiler also accepts shorter sequences with the same meaning:

Directive	Description
<code>#asm</code>	start assembler block
<code>#endasm</code>	end assembler block

Such an assembler block may be located anywhere, inside or outside a function. Outside a function, it behaves syntactically as a declaration. This means that such an assembler block **cannot** split a C declaration somewhere in the middle. Inside a function, it behaves syntactically as one C instruction. This means that there is no trailing semicolon at the end, and no need for enclosing braces. It also means that such an assembler block **cannot** split a C instruction or expression somewhere in the middle.

The following example shows a correct syntax:

```
#pragma asm
    xref asmvar
#pragma endasm

extern char test;

void func(void)
{
    if (test)
    #asm                /* no need for { */
        sec            ; set carry bit
        rol asmvar     ; access assembler variable
    #endasm
    else
        test = 1;
}
```

Inlining with `_asm`

The `_asm()` function inserts inline assembly code in your C program. The syntax is:

```
_asm("string constant", arguments...);
```

The “*string constant*” argument is the assembly code you want embedded in your C program. “*arguments*” follow the standard C rules for passing arguments.

NOTE

*The argument string **must** be shorter than **255** characters. If you wish to insert longer assembly code strings you will have to split your input among consecutive calls to `_asm()`.*

The string you specify follows standard C rules. For example, carriage returns can be denoted by the ‘\n’ character.

For example, to produce the following assembly sequence:

```
xgdx
add #1000h
xgdx
txs
jsr _main
```

you would write:

```
_asm("xgdx\n add #1000H\nxgdx\ntxs\njsr _main\n")
```

The ‘\n’ character is used to separate the instructions when writing multiple instructions in the same line.

To copy a value in the condition register, you write:

```
_asm("tba\ntap\n", varcc);
```

The *varcc* variable is passed in the **d** register, as a first argument. The `_asm` sequence then transfers the low byte from the **b** register to the **a** register then to the condition register.

`_asm()` does not perform any checks on its argument string. Only the assembler can detect errors in code passed as argument to an `_asm()` call.

`_asm()` can be used in expressions, if the code produced by `_asm` complies with the rules for function returns. For example:

```
if (_asm("tpa\ntab\n") & 0x010)
```

allows to test the overflow bit. That way, you can use `_asm()` to write equivalents of C functions directly in assembly language.

NOTE

*With both methods, the assembler source is added as is to the code during the compilation. The optimizer **does not** modify the specified instructions, unless the **-a** option is specified on the code generator. The assembler input can use lowercase or uppercase mnemonics, and may include assembler comments.*

By default, `_asm()` is returning an `int` as any undeclared function. To avoid the need of several definitions (usually conflictuous) when `_asm()` is used with different return types, the compiler implements a special behaviour when a cast is applied to `_asm()`. In such a case, the cast is considered to define the return type of `_asm()` instead of asking for a type conversion. There is no need for any prototype for the `_asm()` function as the parser verifies that the first argument is a string constant.

Writing Interrupt Handlers

A function declared with the type qualifier `@interrupt` is suitable for direct connection to an interrupt (hardware or software). `@interrupt` functions may not return a value. `@interrupt` functions are allowed to have arguments, although hardware generated interrupts are not likely to supply anything meaningful.

When you define an `@interrupt` function, the compiler uses the “`rti`” instruction for the return sequence.

You define an *@interrupt* function by using the type qualifier *@interrupt* to qualify the type returned by the function you declare. An example of such a definition is:

```
@interrupt void it_handler(void)
{
    ...
}
```

You cannot call an *@interrupt* function directly from a C function. It **must** be connected with the interrupt vectors table.

NOTE

The *@interrupt* modifier is an extension to the ANSI standard.

Placing Addresses in Interrupt Vectors

You may use either an assembly language program or a C program to place the addresses of interrupt handlers in interrupt vectors. The assembly language program would be similar to the following example:

```
switch .const
    xref handler1, handler2, handler3
vector1:dc.w handler1
vector2:dc.w handler2
vector3:dc.w handler3
end
```

where *handler1* and so forth are interrupt handlers.

A small C routine that performs the same operation is:

```
extern void handler1(), handler2(), handler3();
void (* const vector[])() =
{
    handler1,
    handler2,
    handler3,
};
```


where *handler1* and so forth are interrupt handlers. Then, at link time, include the following options on the link line:

```
+seg .const -b0xffd6 vector.o
```

where *vector.o* is the file which contains the vector table. This file is provided in the compiler package. You should modify this vector table as necessary for your application.

Calling a Bank Switched Function

When using a **68HC11K4** processor or an external bank switching mechanism, it is possible to call directly a function which is located in a different bank. To perform the correct call, it is necessary to declare the function with the **@far** type modifier. This extension does not modify the code for the function itself, but modifies the way the function is called.

NOTE

The libraries are **not** built as **@far** functions and should **not** be located in a banked area, if they need to be accessed from any bank.

An example of such a definition is:

```
@far int func(void)
{
    ...
}
```

The compiler uses special machine library functions to call a banked function. These library functions are dedicated to the **68HC11C0** and the **68HC11K4** processors and use the first window to access the target function. It is necessary to modify these function to adapt this mechanism to an external bank switching. All these library functions are in the files named *wcalc.s* and *wcalc.s* respectively in the machine library.

When linking a bank switched application, several options must be used to configure the linker properly:

-b	should be specified with the physical address for each code segment or bank
-bs	is automatically set with the value 13 for the 68HC11K4 processor. The bank number extracted by the linker and copied into the window base register, then points to a 8K bytes block. This option is located on the command line.
-m	should be specified with the maximum size of each segment or bank. It is 0x1fff for the 68HC11K4 .
-o	should be specified with the logical starting address for each code segment or bank. It normally is the window base address in the 64K limits.

The switching functions have to be linked in the non switched part of the application. The full machine library should be linked in the non switched part of the application for efficiency, but it may duplicated in each bank for space reasons.

The bank switching mechanism uses static pointer called **c_descc** (for the **68HC11C0**) or **c_desck** (for the **68HC11K4**). This pointer points to a memory location called a *call_descriptor* which is initialized with the actual return address and the return bank number. For each function called through the bank switching mechanism, the compiler creates a pointer to the *@far* function, the **first** word contains the bank number on **16 bits**, and the **second** word contains the address on **16 bits**. This is a **far pointer**; it may be constructed in C as a pointer to a **far function**.

Assuming we are building an application with a root segment at **0xE000** and a window at **0x8000**, the link command file should look like:

```
+seg .text -b 0x10000 -o 0x8000 -m 0x1fff
func1.o func2.o func3.o
+seg .text -b 0x11000 -o 0x8000 -m 0x1fff
func4.o func5.o func6.o
+seg .text -b 0xe000 -o 0xe000
main.o libm.h11
```

given two banks, the first one obtained from *func1*, *func2* and *func3* linked at physical address **0x10000**, the second obtained from *func4*, *func5* and *func6* linked at physical address **0x11000**. The window mechanism has to be initialized with the first window at **0x8000**. The code to perform this initialization **has to be located in the root segment**, for instance at the beginning of the main function. The compiler provides a function named **`_wsetup()`**. You can call it from your C program. It sets the first window with a **8K** size, assigns all the **PORTG** bits for extended addressing, and sets the window start address with the value of the external symbol **`_wbase`**, which has to be set by the linker to the starting address of the window with a **`+def`** directive such as:

```
+seg .text -b 0x10000 -o 0x80000 -m 0x1FFF
+def __wbase=@.text
```

placed just after the opening of a bank text segment. You can use your own initialization mechanism. In that case, you don't need to define this symbol.

The linker should thus be called with the following options:

```
clnk -o appli.h11 -bs13 appli.lkf
```

Interfacing C to Assembly Language

The C cross compiler translates C programs into assembly language according to the specifications described in this section.

You may write external identifiers in both uppercase and lowercase. The compiler prepends an underscore '**`_`**' character to each identifier.

The compiler places function code in the **`.text`** section. Function code is not to be altered or read as data. External function names are published via **`xdef`** declarations.

Literal data such as strings, float or long constants, and switch tables, are normally generated into the **`.const`** section. An option on the code generator allows such constants to be produced in the **`.text`** section

The compiler generates initialized data into the **.data** section. External data names are published via **xref** declarations. Data you declare to be of “const” type by adding the type qualifier *const* to its base type is normally generated into the **.const** section. Data declared with the **@dir** space modifier will be generated into the **.bsct** section. Uninitialized data are normally generated into the **.bss** section, unless forced to the **.data** section by the compiler option **+nobss**.

Section	Declaration	Reference
.bsct	@dir char i;	xdef
.data	int init = 1	xdef
.bss	int uninit	xdef
.text	char putchar(c);	xdef
Any of above	extern int out;	xref

Function calls are performed according to the following:

- 1) Arguments are moved onto the stack from right to left. Unless the function returns a structure, the first argument is stored in the **d** register if its size is less than or equal to the size of an *int*, or in **d** and **2,x** if its type is long or unwidened float.
- 2) A data space address is moved onto the stack if a structure or double return area is required.
- 3) The function is called via a *jsr _func* instruction. If the called is an **@far** function, the calling sequence is different. It is detailed in the next paragraph.
- 4) The arguments to the function are popped off the stack.

Register Usage

Except for the return value, the registers **d**, **y** and the condition codes are undefined on return from a function call. The return value is in **d** if it is of type char widened to short, short, integer or pointer to.... The return value is in the register **d** and the memory location at **2,x** if it is of type long or float. The **d** register holds the low order word.

Stack Model

Stack frames are maintained by each C function, using **x** as a frame pointer. On entry to a function, if less than three bytes are needed for locals, the calling sequence is replaced by a shorter sequence consisting of a **pshx** instruction followed by other instructions depending on the size required. If automatics are needed, the sequence:

```
jsr c_ents
.byte <#>
```

will reserve <#> bytes onto the stack. This sequence is:

```
jsr c_kents
.byte <#>
```

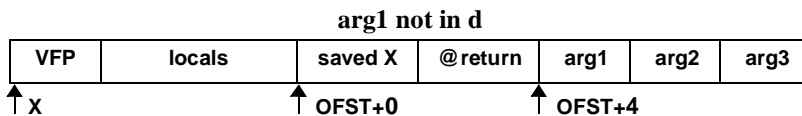
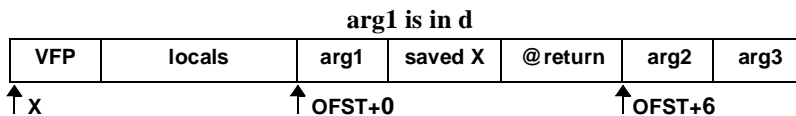
if the first argument is in the **d** register as described above. The stack pointer is set to the beginning of the area reserved for automatic data. This is done because of addressing mode characteristics of the MC68HC11. The assembler symbol **OFST** is set to the size of the space needed for automatics, and arguments are at **OFST+4,x**, **OFST+6,x**, and so forth. Auto storage is on the stack at **OFST-1,x** and down. If no automatics and no arguments are used, the stack frame is **not** built. To return, the sequence:

```
lds 0,x
pulx
rts
```

will restore the previous context. Functions that do not have any arguments or autos, and do not use any temporary storage (required to perform operations on structure data or type cast float data, for example) do not reference the frame pointer **x** and do not stack it.

Stack Representation

The diagrams below show the stack layout at function entry *func*. In this example, *func* has three arguments: *arg1*, *arg2* and *arg3*. The first diagram describes cases where *arg1* is in the **d** register. The second diagram describes cases where *arg1* is not in the **d** register. In both cases, arguments are assumed to be widened, so char is widened to short and float to double.



current frame pointer is in register X
current stack pointer is in register S

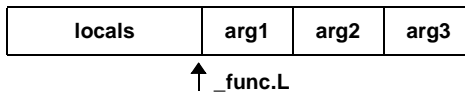
The **VFP** (Virtual Frame Pointer) is built by the entry subroutine or sequence, and points to the location containing the frame pointer of the previous context (saved **X**). It is used to accelerate the return sequence (**lds 0,x**) and to help the code generator to compute local variable addresses. It is not built if it is not needed, depending on the function content, and on the selection of the return sequence.

Static Models

When using any one of the static models, the compiler creates a memory area and a symbol used to access this area. The symbol name is obtained by appending the **.L** suffix to the function name. This symbol is made public if the function is not declared with the *static* C keyword. The first argument may still be passed in register, and will be stored at the function entry. Such a function declaration:

```
@nostack int func(int arg1, int arg2, int arg3)
```

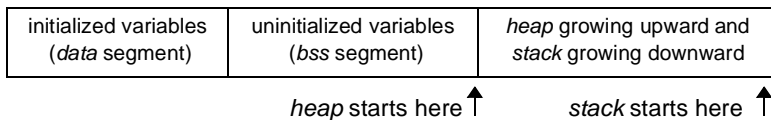
will create the following memory layout:



Heap Management Control with the C Compiler

The name **heap** designates a memory area in which are allocated and deallocated memory blocks for temporary usage. A memory block is allocated with the *malloc()* function, and is released with the *free()* function. The *malloc()* function returns a pointer to the allocated area which can be used until it is released by the *free()* function. Note that the *free()* function has to be called with the pointer returned by *malloc*. The *heap* allocation differs from a local variable allocation because its life is not limited to the life of the function performing the allocation.

In an embedded application, the *malloc-free* mechanism is available and automatically set up by the compiler environment and the library. But it is possible to control externally the *heap* size and location. The default compiler behaviour is to create a data area containing application variables, *heap* and *stack* in the following way:



The *heap* start is the *bss* end, and is equal to the **__memory** symbol defined by the linker with an appropriate **+def** directive. The *stack* pointer is initialized by the application startup (*crt.s*) to an absolute value, generally the end of available memory, or a value relative to the end of the *bss* segment (for multi-tasking purposes for instance). The *heap* grows upwards and the *stack* downwards until collision may occur.

The *heap* management functions maintain a global pointer named *heap pointer*, or simply **HP**, pointing to the *heap top*, and a linked list of memory blocks, free or allocated, in the area between the *heap start* and the *heap top*. In order to be able to easily modify the *heap* implementation, the *heap* management functions use a dedicated function to move the *heap* pointer whenever necessary. The *heap* pointer is initialized to the *heap start*: the *heap* is initially empty. When *malloc* needs some memory and no space is available in the free list, it calls this dedicated function named **_sbreak** to move the *heap* pointer upwards if possible.

`_sbreak` will return a NULL pointer if this move is not possible (usually this is because the heap would overlap the stack). Therefore it is possible to change the heap default location by rewriting the `_sbreak` function.

The default `_sbreak` function provided by the library is as follows:

```
/*      SET SYSTEM BREAK
 */
void *sbreak(int size)
{
    extern char _memory;
    static char *_brk = NULL; /* memory break */
    char *obrk, yellow[40];

    if (!_brk) /* initialize on first call */
        _brk = &_memory;
    obrk = _brk; /* old top */
    _brk += size; /* new top */
    if (yellow = _brk || _brk & _memory)
    { /* check boundaries */
        _brk = obrk; /* restore old top */
        return (NULL); /* return NULL pointer */
    }
    return (obrk); /* return new area start */
}
```

The `yellow` array is used to calculate the *stack* pointer value to check the *heap* limits. This array is declared as the **last** local variable, so its address is almost equal to the stack pointer once the function has been entered. It is declared to be 40 bytes wide to allow for some security margin. If the new top is outside the authorized limits, the function returns a NULL pointer, otherwise, it returns the start of the new allocated area. Note that the top variable `_brk` is a static variable initialized to zero (NULL pointer). It is set to the heap start on the first call. It is also possible to initialize it directly within the declaration, but in this case, we create an initialized variable in the **data** segment which needs to be initialized by the startup. The current code avoids such a requirement by initializing the variable to zero (in the *bss* segment), which is simply done by the standard startup sequence.

Modifying The Heap Location

It is easy to modify the `_sbreak` function in order to handle the heap in a separated memory area. The first example shown below handles the heap area in a standard C array, which will be part of the application variables.

The heap area is declared as an array of **char** simply named `heap`. The algorithm is mainly the same, and once the new top is computed, it is compared with the array limits. Note that the array is declared as a static local variable. It is possible to have it declared as a static global variable. If you want it to be global, be careful on the selected name. You should start it with a `'_'` character to avoid any conflict with the application variables. The modified `_sbreak` function using an array is as follows:

```
/*      SET SYSTEM BREAK IN AN ARRAY
*/
#define HSIZE 800                /* heap size */

void *sbreak(int size)
{
    static char *_brk = NULL; /* memory break */
    static char heap[HSIZE]; /* heap area */
    char *obrk;

    if (!_brk)                /* initialize on first call */
        _brk = heap;
    obrk = _brk;               /* old top */
    _brk += size;              /* new top */
    if (&heap[HSIZE] <= _brk || _brk < heap)
    {
        /* check boundaries */
        _brk = obrk;          /* restore old top */
        return (NULL);        /* return NULL pointer */
    }
    return (obrk);             /* return new area start */
}
```

If you need to place the heap array at a specific location, you need to locate this module at a specific address using the linker options. In the above example, the heap array will be located in the `.bss` segment, thus, complicating the startup code which would need to zero two `bss` sections instead of one. Compiling this function, with the **+nobss** option,

will force allocation of the heap, in the data segment and you can locate it easily with linker directives as:

```
+seg .data -b 0x8000    # heap start
sbreak.o               # sbreak function
```

It is also possible to handle the heap area outside of any C object, just by defining the heap start and end values using the linker **+def** directives. Assuming these symbols are named **_heap_start** and **_heap_end** in C, it is possible to define them at link time with such directives:

```
+def __heap_start=0x8000# heap start
+def __heap_end=0xA000 # heap end
```

NOTE

*Since the initial content of the area can be undefined, the **-ib** option can be specified to not include the segment in the automatic RAM initialization.*

*You need to add an extra **'_'** character when defining a C symbol at link time to match the C compiler naming conventions.*

The modified **_sbreak** function is as follows:

```
/*      SET SYSTEM BREAK IN MEMORY
*/
void *sbreak(int size)
{
    extern char _heap_start, _heap_end; /* heap limits */
    static char *_brk = NULL; /* memory break */
    char *obrk;

    if (!_brk) /* initialize on first call */
        _brk = heap_start;
    obrk = _brk; /* old top */
    _brk += size; /* new top */
    if (&_heap_end <= _brk || _brk < &_heap_start)
    {
        /* check boundaries */
        _brk = obrk; /* restore old top */
        return (NULL); /* return NULL pointer */
    }
    return (obrk); /* return new area start */
}
```

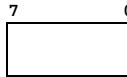
Note that it is possible to use this `_sbreak` function as a *malloc* equivalent function with some restrictions. The *malloc* function should be used when the allocated memory has to be released, or if the application has no idea about the total amount of space needed. If memory can be allocated and never released, the free mechanism is not necessary, nor the linked list of memory blocks built by *malloc*. In that case, simply rename the `_sbreak` function as *malloc*, regardless of its implementation, and you will get a very efficient and compact *malloc* mechanism. You may do the renaming in the function itself, which needs to be recompiled, or by using a `#define` at C level, or by renaming the function at link time with a `+def` directive such as:

```
+pri                # enter a private region
+def _malloc=__sbreak # defines malloc as _sbreak
+new                # close region and forget malloc
libi.hll            # load library containing _sbreak
```

This sequence has to be placed just before loading libraries, or before placing the module containing the `_sbreak` function. The private region is used to forget the `_malloc` reference once it has been aliased to `_sbreak`.

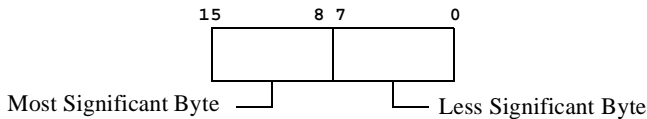
Data Representation

Data objects of type *char* are stored as one byte:



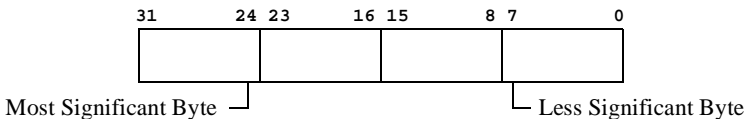
Char representation

Data objects of type *short int*, *int* and *16 bits pointers* are stored as two bytes, more significant byte first:



Short, Int, 16 bits Pointer

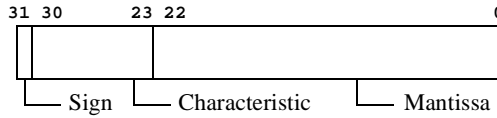
Data objects of type *long integer* and *32 bits pointer* are stored as four bytes, in descending order of significance:



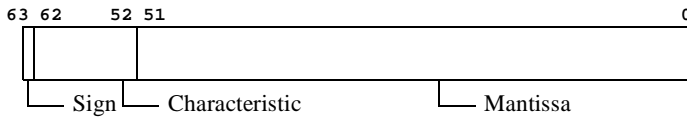
Long, 32 bits Pointer representation

Data objects of type *float* and *double* are represented as for the proposed IEEE Floating Point Standard; four bytes (for float) or eight bytes (for double) stored in descending order of significance. The IEEE representation is: most significant bit is one for negative numbers, and zero otherwise; the next eight bits (for float) or eleven bits (for double) are the characteristic, biased such that the binary exponent of the number is the characteristic minus 126 (for float) or 1022 (for double); the remaining bits are the fraction, starting with the weighted bit. If the characteristic is zero, the entire number is taken as zero, and should be all zeros to avoid confusing some routines that do not process the entire number. Otherwise there is an assumed 0.5 (assertion of the weighted bit) added

to all fractions to put them in the interval $[0.5, 1.0)$. The value of the number is the fraction, multiplied by -1 if the sign bit is set, multiplied by 2 raised to the exponent.



Float representation



Double representation

CHAPTER 4

Using The Compiler

This chapter explains how to use the C cross compiler to compile programs on your host system. It explains how to invoke the compiler, and describes its options. It also describes the functions which constitute the C library. This chapter includes the following sections:

- Invoking the Compiler
- File Naming Conventions
- Generating Listings
- Generating an Error File
- C Library Support
- Descriptions of C Library Functions

Invoking the Compiler

To invoke the cross compiler, type the command **cx6811**, followed by the compiler options and the name(s) of the file(s) you want to compile. All the valid compiler options are described in this chapter. Commands to compile source files have the form:

```
cx6811 [options] <files>.[c|s]
```

cx6811 is the name of the *compiler*. The option list is optional. You must include the name of at least one input file *<file>*. *<file>* can be a C source file with the suffix **.c**, or an assembly language source file with the suffix **.s**. You may specify multiple input files with any combination of these suffixes in any order.

If you do not specify any command line options, **cx6811** will compile your *<files>* with the default options. It will also write the name of each file as it is processed. It writes any error messages to **STDERR**.

The following command line:

```
cx6811 acia.c
```

compiles and assembles the *acia.c* C program, creating the relocatable program **acia.o**.

If the compiler finds an error in your program, it halts compilation. When an error occurs, the compiler sends an error message to your terminal screen unless the option **-e** has been specified on the command line. In this case, all error messages are written to a file whose name is obtained by replacing the suffix **.c** of the source file by the suffix **.err**. An error message is still output on the terminal screen to indicate that errors have been found. **Appendix A**, “[Compiler Error Messages](#)”, lists the error messages the compiler generates. If one or more command line arguments are invalid, **cx6811** processes the next file name on the command line and begins the compilation process again.

The example command above does not specify any compiler options. In this case, the compiler will use only default options to compile and

assemble your program. You can change the operation of the compiler by specifying the options you want when you run the compiler.

To specify options to the compiler, type the appropriate option or options on the command line as shown in the first example above. Options should be separated with spaces. You must include the ‘-’ or ‘+’ that is part of the option name.

Compiler Command Line Options

The **cx6811** compiler accepts the following command line options, each of which is described in detail below:

```
cx6811 [options] <files>
-a*>  assembler options
-ce*  path for errors
-cl*  path for listings
-co*  path for objects
-d*>  define symbol
-ex   prefix executables
-e    create error file
-f*   configuration file
-g*>  code generator options
-i*>  path for include
-l    create listing
-no   do not use optimizer
-o*>  optimizer options
-p*>  parser options
-s    create only assembler file
-sp   create only preprocessor file
-t*   path for temporary files
-v    verbose
-x    do not execute
+*>  select compiler options
```

-a*> specify assembler options. Up to 60 options can be specified on the same command line. See **Chapter 5**, “[Using The Assembler](#)”, for the list of all accepted options.

-ce* specify a path for the error files. By default, errors are created in the same directory than the source files.

- cl*** specify a path for the listing files. By default, listings are created in the same directory than the source files.
- co*** specify a path for the object files. By default, objects are created in the same directory than the source files.
- d*^** specify * as the name of a user-defined preprocessor symbol (**#define**). The form of the definition is **-dsymbol[=value]**; the symbol is set to **1** if value is omitted. You can specify up to 60 such definitions.
- e** log errors from parser in a file instead of displaying them on the terminal screen. The error file name is defaulted to *<file>.err*, and is created only if there are errors.
- ex** use the compiler driver's path as prefix to quickly locate the executable passes. Default is to use the path variable environment. This method is faster than the default behavior but reduces the command line length.
- f*** specify * as the name of a configuration file. This file contains a list of options which will be automatically used by the compiler. If no file name is specified, then the compiler looks for a default configuration file named *cx6811.cxf* in the compiler directory as specified in the installation process. See **Appendix B**, "[Modifying Compiler Operation](#)" for more information.
- g*>** specify code generation options. Up to 60 options can be specified. See **Appendix D**, "[Compiler Passes](#)", for the list of all accepted options.
- i*>** define include path. You can define up to 60 different paths. Each path is a directory name, **not** terminated by any directory separator character.
- l** merge C source listing with assembly language code; listing output defaults to *<file>.ls*.
- no** do not use the optimizer.

- o*>** specify optimizer options. Up to 60 options can be specified. See **Appendix D**, “[Compiler Passes](#)”, for the list of all accepted options.
- p*>** specify parser options. Up to 60 options can be specified. See **Appendix D**, “[Compiler Passes](#)”, to get the list of all accepted options.
- s** create only assembler files and stop. Do not assemble the files produced.
- sp** create only preprocessed files and stop. Do not compile files produced. Preprocessed output defaults to <file>.p. The produced files can be compiled as C source files.
- t*** specify path for temporary files. The path is a directory name, **not** terminated by any directory separator character.
- v** be “verbose”. Before executing a command, print the command, along with its arguments, to STDOUT. The default is to output only the names of each file processed. Each name is followed by a colon and newline.
- x** do not execute the passes, instead write to STDOUT the commands which otherwise would have been performed.
- +*>** select a predefined compiler option. These options are predefined in the configuration file. You can specify up to 60 compiler options on the command line. The following documents the available options as provided by the default configuration file:
- +alu** generate code for processors supporting an arithmetic unit (**M** and **N** families). This implies to use the specific libraries built to support the arithmetic unit.
- +c0** generate bank switching code for the **68HC11C0** processor.

- +debug** produce debug information to be used by the debug utilities provided with the compiler and by any external debugger.
- +fast** produce fast function entry and exit sequences. For more information, see “[Fast Function Calls](#)” in **Chapter 3**.
- +nobss** do not use the `.bss` section for variables allocated in external memory. By default, such uninitialized variables are defined into the `.bss` section. This option is useful to force all variables to be grouped into a single section.
- +nocst** output literals and constants in the code section `.text` instead of the specific section `.const`.
- +nostk** force all functions not to use the stack. The **+st** options should be used to select the compiler behaviour. For more information, see “[Stack Usage](#)” in **Chapter 3**.
- +nowiden** do not widen char and float arguments. By default, char arguments are promoted to int before to be passed as argument.
- +rev** reverse the bitfield filling order. By default, bitfields are filled from the Less Significant Bit (**LSB**) towards the Most Significant Bit (**MSB**) of a memory cell. If the **+rev** option is specified, bitfields are filled from the *msb* to the *lsb*.
- +sprec** force all floating point arithmetic to single precision. If this option is enabled, all floats, doubles and long doubles are treated as float, and calculation are made in single precision.
- +st0** enable *static model 0*. Functions declared with the `@nostack` modifier will use a *private* area located in the `.bss` section for their arguments and local variables. For more information, see “[Stack Usage](#)” in **Chapter 3**.

- +st1** enable *static model 1*. Functions declared with the `@nostack` modifier will use a *private* area located in the `.bsct` section for their arguments and local variables. For more information, see “[Stack Usage](#)” in **Chapter 3**.
- +st2** enable *static model 2*. Functions declared with the `@nostack` modifier will use a *shared* area located in the `.bss` section for their arguments and local variables. For more information, see “[Stack Usage](#)” in **Chapter 3**.
- +st3** enable *static model 3*. Functions declared with the `@nostack` modifier will use a *shared* area located in the `.bsct` section for their arguments and local variables. For more information, see “[Stack Usage](#)” in **Chapter 3**.
- +zpage** force all data to be defined into the `.bsct` section. This option assumes that the full application declares less than the available space in the `.bsct` section. The linker should be configured to check the size. For more information, see “[Placing Data Objects in The Zero Page Section](#)” in **Chapter 3**.

File Naming Conventions

The programs making up the C cross compiler generate the following output file names, by default. See the documentation on a specific program for information about how to change the default file names accepted as input or generated as output.

Program	Input File Name	Output File Name
cp6811	<file>.c	<file>.1
cg6811	<file>.1	<file>.2
co6811	<file>.2	<file>.s
error listing	<file>.c	<file>.err
assembler listing	<file>.[c s]	<file>.ls
C header files	<file>.h	

ca6811	<file>.s	<file>.o
source listing	<file>.s	<file>.ls

clnk	<file>.o	name required
-------------	----------	---------------

cbank	<file>	STDOUT
chex	<file>	STDOUT
clabs	<file>.h12>	<files>.la
clib	<file>	name required
cobj	<file>	STDOUT
cv695	<file>	<file>.695

Generating Listings

You can generate listings of the output of any (or all) the compiler passes by specifying the **-l** option to **cx6811**. You can locate the listing file in a different directory by using the **-cl** option.

The example program provided in the package shows the listing produced by compiling the C source file *acia.c* with the **-l** option:

```
cx6811 -l acia.c
```

Generating an Error File

You can generate a file containing all the error messages output by the parser by specifying the **-e** option to the **cx6811** compiler. You can locate the error file in a different directory by using the **-ce** option. For example, you would type:

```
cx6811 -e prog.c
```

The error file name is obtained from the source filename by replacing the *.c* suffix by the *.err* suffix.

Return Status

cx6811 returns success if it can process all files successfully. It prints a message to STDERR and returns failure if there are errors in at least one processed file.

Examples

To echo the names of each program that the compiler runs:

```
cx6811 -v file.c
```

To save the intermediate files created by the code generator and halt before the assembler:

```
cx6811 -s file.c
```

C Library Support

This section describes the facilities provided by the C library. The C cross compiler for MC68HC11 includes all useful functions for programmers writing applications for ROM-based systems.

How C Library Functions are Packaged

The functions in the C library are packaged in three separate sub-libraries; one for machine-dependent routines (the *machine* library), one that does not support floating point (the *integer* library) and one that provides full floating point support (the *floating point* library). If your application does not perform floating point calculations, you can decrease its size and increase its runtime efficiency by including only the integer library.

Inserting Assembler Code Directly

Assembler instructions can be quoted directly into C source files, and entered unchanged into the output assembly stream, by use of the `_asm()` function. This function is not part of any library as it is recognized by the compiler itself.

Linking Libraries with Your Program

If your application requires floating point support, you must specify the floating point library **before** the integer library in the linker command file. Modules common to both libraries will therefore be loaded from the floating point library, followed by the appropriate modules from the floating point and integer libraries, in that order.

Integer Library Functions

The following table lists the C library functions in the integer library.

<code>_asm</code>	<code>iscentrl</code>	<code>memmov</code>	<code>strcpy</code>
<code>abort</code>	<code>isdigit</code>	<code>memset</code>	<code>strcspn</code>
<code>abs</code>	<code>isgraph</code>	<code>printf</code>	<code>strlen</code>
<code>atoi</code>	<code>islower</code>	<code>putchar</code>	<code>strncat</code>
<code>atol</code>	<code>isprint</code>	<code>puts</code>	<code>strcmp</code>
<code>calloc</code>	<code>ispunct</code>	<code>rand</code>	<code>strncpy</code>
<code>div</code>	<code>isspace</code>	<code>realloc</code>	<code>strpbrk</code>
<code>eencpy</code>	<code>isupper</code>	<code>sbreak</code>	<code>strchr</code>
<code>eepera</code>	<code>isxdigit</code>	<code>scanf</code>	<code>strspn</code>
<code>eeplib</code>	<code>labs</code>	<code>setjmp</code>	<code>strstr</code>
<code>exit</code>	<code>ldiv</code>	<code>sprintf</code>	<code>strtol</code>

free	longjmp	srand	strtoul
getchar	malloc	sscanf	tolower
gets	memchr	strcat	toupper
isalnum	memcmp	strchr	vprintf
isalpha	memcpy	strcmp	vsprintf

Floating Point Library Functions

The following table lists the C library functions in the float library.

acos	cosh	log	sinh
asin	exp	log10	sprintf
atan	fabs	modf	sqrt
atan2	floor	pow	sscanf
atof	fmod	printf	strtod
ceil	frexp	scanf	tan
cos	ldexp	sin	tanh

Common Input/Output Functions

Six of the functions that perform stream input/output are included in both the integer and floating point libraries. The functionalities of the versions in the integer library are a subset of the functionalities of their floating point counterparts. The versions in the integer library cannot print or manipulate floating point numbers. These functions are: *printf*, *scanf*, *sprintf*, *sscanf*, *vprintf* and *vsprintf*.

Functions Implemented as Macros

Five of the functions in the C library are actually implemented as “macros”. Unlike other functions, which (if they do not return *int*) are declared in header files and defined in a separate object module that is linked in with your program later, functions implemented as macros are defined using **#define** preprocessor directives in the header file that declares them. Macros can therefore be used independently of any library by including the header file that defines and declares them with your program, as explained below. The functions in the C library that are implemented as macros are: *max*, *min*, *va_arg*, *va_end*, and *va_start*.

Including Header Files

If your application calls a C library function, you must include the header file that declares the function at compile time, in order to use the proper return type and the proper function prototyping, so that all the expected arguments are properly evaluated. You do this by writing a

preprocessor directive of the form:

```
#include <header_name>
```

in your program, where *<header_name>* is the name of the appropriate header file enclosed in angle brackets. The required header file should be included before you refer to any function that it declares.

The names of the header files packaged with the C library and the functions declared in each header are listed below.

<assert.h> - Header file for the assertion macro: *assert*.

<ctype.h> - Header file for the character functions: *isalnum*, *isalpha*, *iscntrl*, *isgraph*, *isprint*, *ispunct*, *isspace*, *isxdigit*, *isdigit*, *isupper*, *islower*, *tolower* and *toupper*.

<float.h> - Header file for limit constants for floating point values.

<io.h> - Header file for input-output registers. Each register has an upper-case name which matches the standard Motorola definition. They are mapped at a **base** address defaulted to **0x1000**. Specifics I/O header files are provided for the **MC68HC11K4**, **MC68HC11F1** and **MC68HC11C0** respectively called **iok4.h**, **iof1.h** and **ioc0.h**.

<limits.h> - Header file for limit constants of the compiler.

<math.h> - Header file for mathematical functions: *acos*, *asin*, *atan*, *atan2*, *ceil*, *cos*, *cosh*, *exp*, *fabs*, *floor*, *fmod*, *frexp*, *ldexp*, *log*, *log10*, *modf*, *pow*, *sin*, *sinh*, *sqrt*, *tan* and *tanh*.

<setjmp.h> - Header file for nonlocal jumps: *setjmp* and *longjmp*

<stdarg.h> - Header file for walking argument lists: *va_arg*, *va_end* and *va_start*. Use these macros with any function you write that must accept a variable number of arguments.

<stddef.h> - Header file for types: *size_t*, *wchar_t* and *ptrdiff_t*.

<stdio.h> - Header file for stream input/output: *getchar*, *gets*, *printf*, *putchar*, *puts* and *sprintf*.

<stdlib.h> - Header file for general utilities: *abs*, *abort*, *atof*, *atoi*, *atol*, *calloc*, *div*, *exit*, *free*, *labs*, *ldiv*, *malloc*, *rand*, *realloc*, *srand*, *strtod*, *strtol* and *strtoul*.

<string.h> - Header file for string functions: *memchr*, *memcmp*, *memcpy*, *memmove*, *memset*, *strcat*, *strchr*, *strcmp*, *strcpy*, *strcspn*, *strlen*, *strncat*, *strncmp*, *strncpy*, *strpbrk*, *strrchr*, *strspn* and *strstr*.

Functions returning int - C library functions that return *int* and can therefore be called without any header file, since *int* is the function return type that the compiler assumed by default, are: *isalnum*, *isalpha*, *isctrl*, *isgraph*, *isprint*, *ispunct*, *isspace*, *isxdigit*, *isdigit*, *isupper*, *islower*, *sbreak*, *tolower* and *toupper*.

Descriptions of C Library Functions

The following pages describe each of the functions in the C library in quick reference format. The descriptions are in alphabetical order by function name.

The *syntax* field describes the function prototype with the return type and the expected arguments, and if any, the header file name where this function has been declared.

`_asm`

Description

Generate inline assembly code

Syntax

```
/* no header file need be included */  
_asm(<string constant>, ...)
```

Function

`_asm` generates inline assembly code by copying *<string constant>* and quoting it into the output assembly code stream. If extra arguments are specified, they are processed as for a standard function. If arguments are stacked, they are popped off just after the inline code produced.

For more information, see “[Inserting Inline Assembly Instructions](#)” in **Chapter 3**.

Return Value

Nothing, unless `_asm()` is used in an expression. In that case, normal return conventions must be followed. See “[Register Usage](#)” in **Chapter 3**.

Example

The sequence `tsx; pshx`, may be generated by the following call:

```
_asm( "\\tttsx\\n\\tpshx\\n" );
```

Notes

`_asm()` is not packaged in any library. It is recognized (and its argument passed unchanged) by the compiler itself.

`_wsetup`

Description

Initialize **K4** window registers

Syntax

```
/* no header file need to be included */  
_wsetup(void)
```

Function

`_wsetup` initializes the window mechanism of the **68HC11K4** processor. It uses the external symbol `__wbase` to know the starting address of the window, and sets the first window for a **8K** window starting window from that address. This symbol is usually defined at link time.

For more information, see “[Calling a Bank Switched Function](#)” in **Chapter 3**

Return Value

Nothing

Example

To set the window mechanism at the beginning of the application:

```
_wsetup();
```

Notes

`_wsetup()` is packaged in the machine library.

abort

Description

Abort program execution

Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void abort(void)
```

Function

abort stops the program execution by calling the *exit* function which is placed by the startup module just after the call to the main function.

Return Value

abort never returns.

Example

To abort in case of error:

```
if (fatal_error)
    abort();
```

See Also

exit

Notes

abort is a macro equivalent to the function name *exit*.

abs

Description

Find absolute value

Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
int abs(int i)
```

Function

abs obtains the absolute value of *i*. No check is made to see that the result can be properly represented.

Return Value

abs returns the absolute value of *i*, expressed as an **int**.

Example

To print out a debit or credit balance:

```
printf("balance %d%s\n", abs(bal), (bal < 0)? "CR" : "");
```

See Also

labs, *fabs*

Notes

abs is packaged in the integer library.

acos

Description

Arccosine

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double acos(double x)
```

Function

acos computes the angle in radians the cosine of which is *x*, to full double precision.

Return Value

acos returns the closest internal representation to *acos(x)*, expressed as a double floating value in the range [0, pi]. If *x* is outside the range [-1, 1], *acos* returns zero.

Example

To find the arccosine of *x*:

```
theta = acos(x);
```

See Also

asin, *atan*, *atan2*

Notes

acos is packaged in the floating point library.

asin

Description

Arcsine

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double asin(double x)
```

Function

asin computes the angle in radians the sine of which is x , to full double precision.

Return Value

asin returns the nearest internal representation to $\text{asin}(x)$, expressed as a double floating value in the range $[-\pi/2, \pi/2]$. If x is outside the range $[-1, 1]$, *asin* returns zero.

Example

To compute the arcsine of y :

```
theta = asin(y);
```

See Also

acos, *atan*, *atan2*

Notes

asin is packaged in the floating point library.

atan

Description

Arctangent

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double atan(double x)
```

Function

atan computes the angle in radians; the tangent of which is x , *atan* computes the angle in radians; the tangent of which is x , to full double precision.

Return Value

atan returns the nearest internal representation to $atan(x)$, expressed as a double floating value in the range $[-\pi/2, \pi/2]$.

Example

To find the phase angle of a vector in degrees:

```
theta = atan(y/x) * 180.0 / pi;
```

See Also

acos, *asin*, *atan2*

Notes

atan is packaged in the floating point library.

atan2

Description

Arctangent of y/x

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double atan2(double y, double x)
```

Function

atan2 computes the angle in radians the tangent of which is y/x to full double precision. If y is negative, the result is negative. If x is negative, the magnitude of the result is greater than $\pi/2$.

Return Value

atan2 returns the closest internal representation to $\text{atan}(y/x)$, expressed as a double floating value in the range $[-\pi, \pi]$. If both input arguments are zero, *atan2* returns zero.

Example

To find the phase angle of a vector in degrees:

```
theta = atan2(y/x) * 180.0/pi;
```

See Also

acos, *asin*, *atan*

Notes

atan2 is packaged in the floating point library.

atof

Description

Convert buffer to double

Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
double atof(char *nptr)
```

Function

atof converts the string at *nptr* into a double. The string is taken as the text representation of a decimal number, with an optional fraction and exponent. Leading whitespace is skipped and an optional sign is permitted; conversion stops on the first unrecognizable character. Acceptable inputs match the pattern:

$$[+|-]d*[\.d*][e[+|-]dd*]$$

where **d** is any decimal digit and **e** is the character 'e' or 'E'. No checks are made against overflow, underflow, or invalid character strings.

Return Value

atof returns the converted double value. If the string has no recognizable characters, it returns zero.

Example

To read a string from STDIN and convert it to a double at *d*:

```
gets(buf);
d = atof(buf);
```

See Also

atoi, *atol*, *strtol*, *strtod*

Notes

atof is packaged in the floating point library.

atoi

Description

Convert buffer to integer

Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
int atoi(char *nptr)
```

Function

atoi converts the string at *nptr* into an integer. The string is taken as the text representation of a decimal number. Leading whitespace is skipped and an optional sign is permitted; conversion stops on the first unrecognizable character. Acceptable characters are the decimal digits. If the stop character is **I** or **L**, it is skipped over.

No checks are made against overflow or invalid character strings.

Return Value

atoi returns the converted integer value. If the string has no recognizable characters, zero is returned.

Example

To read a string from STDIN and convert it to an *int* at *i*:

```
gets(buf);
i = atoi(buf);
```

See Also

atof, *atol*, *strtol*, *strtod*

Notes

atoi is packaged in the integer library.

atol

Description

Convert buffer to long

Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
long atol(char *nptr)
```

Function

atol converts the string at *nptr* into a long integer. The string is taken as the text representation of a decimal number. Leading whitespace is skipped and an optional sign is permitted; conversion stops on the first unrecognizable character. Acceptable characters are the decimal digits. If the stop character is **I** or **L** it is skipped over.

No checks are made against overflow or invalid character strings.

Return Value

atol returns the converted long integer. If the string has no recognizable characters, zero is returned.

Example

To read a string from STDIN and convert it to a long **l**:

```
gets(buf);
l = atol(buf);
```

See Also

atof, *atoi*, *strtol*, *strtod*

Notes

atol is packaged in the integer library.

`_checksum`

Description

Verify the recorded checksum

Syntax

```
int _checksum()
```

Function

`_checksum` scans the descriptor built by the linker and controls that the computed checksum is equal to the one expected.

For more information, see “[Checksum Computation](#)” in **Chapter 6**.

Return Value

`_checksum` returns 0 if the checksum is correct, or a value different of 0 otherwise.

Example

```
if (_checksum())  
    abort();
```

Notes

The descriptor is built by the linker only if the `_checksum` function is called by the application, even if there are segments marked with the **-ck** option.

`_checksum` is packaged in the integer library.

calloc

Description

Allocate and clear space on the heap

Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void *calloc(int nelem, int elsize)
```

Function

calloc allocates space on the heap for an item of size *nbytes*, where $nbytes = nelem * elsize$. The space allocated is guaranteed to be at least *nbytes* long, starting from the pointer returned, which is guaranteed to be on a proper storage boundary for an object of any type. The heap is grown as necessary. If space is exhausted, *calloc* returns a null pointer. The pointer returned may be assigned to an object of any type without casting. The allocated space is initialized to zero.

Return Value

calloc returns a pointer to the start of the allocated cell if successful; otherwise it returns NULL.

Example

To allocate an array of ten doubles:

```
double *pd;
pd = calloc(10, sizeof (double));
```

See Also

free, malloc, realloc

Notes

calloc is packaged in the integer library.

ceil

Description

Round to next higher integer

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double ceil(double x)
```

Function

ceil computes the smallest integer greater than or equal to *x*.

Return Value

ceil returns the smallest integer greater than or equal to *x*, expressed as a double floating value.

Example

x	ceil(x)
5.1	6.0
5.0	5.0
0.0	0.0
-5.0	-5.0
-5.1	-5.0

See Also

floor

Notes

ceil is packaged in the floating point library.

COS

Description

Cosine

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double cos(double x)
```

Function

cos computes the cosine of x , expressed in radians, to full double precision. If the magnitude of x is too large to contain a fractional quadrant part, the value of *cos* is 1.

Return Value

cos returns the nearest internal representation to $\cos(x)$ in the range $[0, \pi]$, expressed as a double floating value. A large argument may return a meaningless value.

Example

To rotate a vector through the angle *theta*:

```
xnew = xold * cos(theta) - yold * sin(theta);
ynew = xold * sin(theta) + yold * cos(theta);
```

See Also

sin, *tan*

Notes

cos is packaged in the floating point library.

cosh

Description

Hyperbolic cosine

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double cosh(double x)
```

Function

cosh computes the hyperbolic cosine of x to full double precision.

Return Value

cosh returns the nearest internal representation to $\cosh(x)$ expressed as a double floating value. If the result is too large to be properly represented, *cosh* returns zero.

Example

To use the Moivre's theorem to compute $(\cosh x + \sinh x)$ to the n th power:

```
demoivre = cosh(n * x) + sinh(n * x);
```

See Also

exp, *sinh*, *tanh*

Notes

cosh is packaged in the floating point library.

div

Description

Divide with quotient and remainder

Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>

```

Function

div divides the integer *numer* by the integer *denom* and returns the quotient and the remainder in a structure of type *div_t*. The field *quot* contains the quotient and the field *rem* contains the remainder.

Return Value

div returns a structure of type *div_t* containing both quotient and remainder.

Example

To get minutes and seconds from a delay in seconds:

```
div_t result;

result = div(time, 60);
min = result.quot;
sec = result.rem;
```

See Also

ldiv

Notes

div is packaged in the integer library.

eeepcpy

Description

Copy a buffer to an **eeeprom** buffer

Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
void *eeepcpy(void *s1, void *s2, unsigned int n)
```

Function

eeepcpy copies the first *n* characters starting at location *s2* into the *eeeprom* buffer beginning at *s1*.

Return Value

eeepcpy returns *s1*.

Example

To place “*first string, second string*” in *eeepbuf[]*:

```
eeepcpy(eeepbuf, "first string", 12);
eeepcpy(eeepbuf + 13, ", second string", 15);
```

See Also

eeepset, *eeepera*

Notes

eeepcpy is packaged in the integer library.

eepera

Description

Erase the full *eprom* space

Syntax

```
void eepera(void)
```

Function

eepera erases the full *eprom* space with the global erase sequence. It does not erase the **config** register.

Return Value

Nothing.

Example

To erase the full *eprom* space:

```
eepera();
```

See Also

eeplib, *eeplib*

Notes

eepera is packaged in the machine library.

eepset

Description

Propagate fill character throughout *eeprom* buffer

Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
void *eepset(void *s, int c, unsigned int n)
```

Function

eepset floods the *n* character buffer starting at *eeprom* location *s* with fill character *c*. The function waits for all bytes to be programmed.

Return Value

eepset returns *s*.

Example

To flood a 512 byte *eeprom* buffer with NULs:

```
eepset(eepbuf, '\0', BUFSIZ);
```

See Also

eencpy, *eepera*

Notes

eepset is packaged in the integer library.

exit

Description

Exit program execution

Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void exit(int status)
```

Function

exit stops the execution of a program by switching to the startup module just after the call to the *main* function. The status argument is not used by the current implementation.

Return Value

exit never returns.

Example

To *exit* in case of error:

```
if (fatal_error)
    exit();
```

See Also

abort

Notes

exit is in the startup module.

exp

Description

Exponential

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double exp(double x)
```

Function

exp computes the exponential of *x* to full double precision.

Return Value

exp returns the nearest internal representation to *exp x*, expressed as a double floating value. If the result is too large to be properly represented, *exp* returns zero.

Example

To compute the hyperbolic sine of **x**:

```
sinh = (exp(x) - exp(-x)) / 2.0;
```

See Also

log

Notes

exp is packaged in the floating point library.

fabs

Description

Find double absolute value

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double fabs(double x)
```

Function

fabs obtains the absolute value of *x*.

Return Value

fabs returns the absolute value of *x*, expressed as a double floating value.

Example

<i>x</i>	<i>fabs(x)</i>
5.0	5.0
0.0	0.0
-3.7	3.7

See Also

abs, *labs*

Notes

fabs is packaged in the floating point library.

floor

Description

Round to next lower integer

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double floor(double x)
```

Function

floor computes the largest integer less than or equal to *x*.

Return Value

floor returns the largest integer less than or equal to *x*, expressed as a double floating value.

Example

x	floor(x)
5.1	5.0
5.0	5.0
0.0	0.0
-5.0	-5.0
-5.1	-6.0

See Also

ceil

Notes

floor is packaged in the floating point library.

fmod

Description

Find double modulus

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double fmod(double x, double y)
```

Function

fmod computes the floating point remainder of x / y , to full double precision. The return value of f is determined using the formula:

$$f = x - i * y$$

where i is some integer, f is the same sign as x , and the absolute value of f is less than the absolute value of y .

Return Value

fmod returns the value of f expressed as a double floating value. If y is zero, *fmod* returns zero.

Example

x	y	fmod(x, y)
5.5	5.0	0.5
5.0	5.0	0.0
0.0	0.0	0.0
-5.5	5.0	-0.5

Notes

fmod is packaged in the floating point library.

free

Description

Free space on the heap

Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void free(void *ptr)
```

Function

free returns an allocated cell to the heap for subsequence reuse. The cell pointer *ptr* must have been obtained by an earlier *calloc*, *malloc*, or *realloc* call; otherwise the heap will become corrupted. *free* does its best to check for invalid values of *ptr*. A NULL value for *ptr* is explicitly allowed, however, and is ignored.

Return Value

Nothing.

Example

To give back an allocated area:

```
free(pd);
```

See Also

calloc, *malloc*, *realloc*

Notes

No effort is made to lower the system break when storage is freed, so it is quite possible that earlier activity on the heap may cause problems later on the stack.

free is packaged in the integer library.

frexp

Description

Extract fraction from exponent part

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double frexp(double val, int *exp)
```

Function

frexp partitions the double at *val*, which should be non-zero, into a fraction in the interval $[1/2, 1)$ times two raised to an integer power. It then delivers the integer power to **exp*, and returns the fractional portion as the value of the function. The exponent is generally meaningless if *val* is zero.

Return Value

frexp returns the power of two fraction of the double at *val* as the return value of the function, and writes the exponent at **exp*.

Example

To implement the *sqrt(x)* function:

```
double sqrt(double x)
{
    extern double newton(double);
    int n;

    x = frexp(x, &n);
    x = newton(x);
    if (n & 1)
        x *= SQRT2;
    return (ldexp(x, n / 2));
}
```

See Also

ldexp

Notes

frexp is packaged in the floating point library.

getchar

Description

Get character from input stream

Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
int getchar(void)
```

Function

getchar obtains the next input character, if any, from the user supplied input stream. This user must rewrite this function in C or in assembly language to provide an interface to the input mechanism of the C library.

Return Value

getchar returns the next character from the input stream. If end of file (break) is encountered, or a read error occurs, *getchar* returns EOF.

Example

To copy characters from the input stream to the output stream:

```
while ((c = getchar()) != EOF)
    putchar(c);
```

See Also

putchar

Notes

getchar is packaged in the integer library.

gets

Description

Get a text line from input stream

Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
char *gets(char *s)
```

Function

gets copies characters from the input stream to the buffer starting at *s*. Characters are copied until a newline is reached or end of file is reached. If a newline is reached, it is discarded and a NUL is written immediately following the last character read into *s*.

gets uses *getchar* to read each character.

Return Value

gets returns *s* if successful. If end of file is reached, *gets* returns NULL. If a read error occurs, the array contents are indeterminate and *gets* returns NULL.

Example

To copy input to output, line by line:

```
while (puts(gets(buf)))
    ;
```

See Also

puts

Notes

There is no assured limit on the size of the line read by *gets*.

gets is packaged in the integer library.

isalnum

Description

Test for alphabetic or numeric character

Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isalnum(int c)
```

Function

isalnum tests whether *c* is an alphabetic character (either upper or lower case), or a decimal digit.

Return Value

isalnum returns nonzero if the argument is an alphabetic or numeric character; otherwise the value returned is zero.

Example

To test for a valid C identifier:

```
if (isalpha(*s) || *s == '_')
    for (++s; isalnum(*s) || *s == '_'; ++s)
        ;
```

See Also

isalpha, *isdigit*, *islower*, *isupper*, *isxdigit*, *tolower*, *toupper*

Notes

If the argument is outside the range [-1, 255], the result is undefined.

isalnum is packaged in the integer library.

isalpha

Description

Test for alphabetic character

Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isalpha(int c)
```

Function

isalpha tests whether *c* is an alphabetic character, either upper or lower case.

Return Value

isalpha returns nonzero if the argument is an alphabetic character. Otherwise the value returned is zero.

Example

To find the end points of an alphabetic string:

```
while (*first && !isalpha(*first))
    ++first;
for (last = first; isalpha(*last); ++last)
    ;
```

See Also

isalnum, isdigit, islower, isupper, isxdigit, tolower, toupper

Notes

If the argument is outside the range [-1, 255], the result is undefined.

isalpha is packaged in the integer library.

isctrl

Description

Test for control character

Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isctrl(int c)
```

Function

isctrl tests whether *c* is a delete character (0177 in ASCII), or an ordinary control character (less than 040 in ASCII).

Return Value

isctrl returns nonzero if *c* is a control character; otherwise the value is zero.

Example

To map control characters to percent signs:

```
for (; *s; ++s)
    if (isctrl(*s))
        *s = '%';
```

See Also

isgraph, *isprint*, *ispunct*, *isspace*

Notes

If the argument is outside the range [-1, 255], the result is undefined.

isctrl is packaged in the integer library.

isdigit

Description

Test for digit

Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isdigit(int c)
```

Function

isdigit tests whether *c* is a decimal digit.

Return Value

isdigit returns nonzero if *c* is a decimal digit; otherwise the value returned is zero.

Example

To convert a decimal digit string to a number:

```
for (sum = 0; isdigit(*s); ++s)
    sum = sum * 10 + *s - '0';
```

See Also

isalnum, *isalpha*, *islower*, *isupper*, *isxdigit*, *tolower*, *toupper*

Notes

If the argument is outside the range [-1, 255], the result is undefined.

isdigit is packaged in the integer library.

isgraph

Description

Test for graphic character

Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isgraph(int c)
```

Function

isgraph tests whether *c* is a graphic character; *i.e.* any printing character except a space (040 in ASCII).

Return Value

isgraph returns nonzero if *c* is a graphic character. Otherwise the value returned is zero.

Example

To output only graphic characters:

```
for (; *s; ++s)
    if (isgraph(*s))
        putchar(*s);
```

See Also

isctrl, *isprint*, *ispunct*, *isspace*

Notes

If the argument is outside the range [-1, 255], the result is undefined.

isgraph is packaged in the integer library.

islower

Description

Test for lower-case character

Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int islower(int c)
```

Function

islower tests whether *c* is a lower-case alphabetic character.

Return Value

islower returns nonzero if *c* is a lower-case character; otherwise the value returned is zero.

Example

To convert to upper-case:

```
if (islower(c))
    c += 'A' - 'a';    /* also see toupper() */
```

See Also

isalnum, *isalpha*, *isdigit*, *isupper*, *isxdigit*, *tolower*, *toupper*

Notes

If the argument is outside the range [-1, 255], the result is undefined.

islower is packaged in the integer library.

isprint

Description

Test for printing character

Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isprint(int c)
```

Function

isprint tests whether *c* is any printing character. Printing characters are all characters between a space (040 in ASCII) and a tilde '~' character (0176 in ASCII).

Return Value

isprint returns nonzero if *c* is a printing character; otherwise the value returned is zero.

Example

To output only printable characters:

```
for (; *s; ++s)
    if (isprint(*s))
        putchar(*s);
```

See Also

isctrl, *isgraph*, *ispunct*, *isspace*

Notes

If the argument is outside the range [-1, 255], the result is undefined.

isprint is packaged in the integer library.

ispunct

Description

Test for punctuation character

Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int ispunct(int c)
```

Function

ispunct tests whether *c* is a punctuation character. Punctuation characters include any printing character except space, a digit, or a letter.

Return Value

ispunct returns nonzero if *c* is a punctuation character; otherwise the value returned is zero.

Example

To collect all punctuation characters in a string into a buffer:

```
for (i = 0; *s; ++s)
    if (ispunct(*s))
        buf[i++] = *s;
```

See Also

iscntrl, *isgraph*, *isprint*, *isspace*

Notes

If the argument is outside the range [-1, 255], the result is undefined.

ispunct is packaged in the integer library.

isspace

Description

Test for whitespace character

Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isspace(int c)
```

Function

isspace tests whether *c* is a whitespace character. Whitespace characters are horizontal tab (`'\t'`), newline (`'\n'`), vertical tab (`'\v'`), form feed (`'\f'`), carriage return (`'\r'`), and space (`' '`).

Return Value

isspace returns nonzero if *c* is a whitespace character; otherwise the value returned is zero.

Example

To skip leading whitespace:

```
while (isspace(*s))
    ++s;
```

See Also

isctrl, *isgraph*, *isprint*, *ispunct*

Notes

If the argument is outside the range $[-1, 255]$, the result is undefined.

isspace is packaged in the integer library.

isupper

Description

Test for upper-case character

Syntax

```
/* no header file need be included */  
int isupper(int c)
```

Function

isupper tests whether *c* is an upper-case alphabetic character.

Return Value

isupper returns nonzero if *c* is an upper-case character; otherwise the value returned is zero.

Example

To convert to lower-case:

```
if (isupper(c))  
    c += 'a' - 'A'; /* also see tolower() */
```

See Also

isalnum, *isalpha*, *isdigit*, *islower*, *isxdigit*, *tolower*, *toupper*

Notes

If the argument is outside the range [-1, 255], the result is undefined.

isupper is packaged in the integer library.

isxdigit

Description

Test for hexadecimal digit

Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int isxdigit(int c)
```

Function

isxdigit tests whether *c* is a hexadecimal digit, *i.e.* in the set [0123456789abcdefABCDEF].

Return Value

isxdigit returns nonzero if *c* is a hexadecimal digit; otherwise the value returned is zero.

Example

To accumulate a hexadecimal digit:

```
for (sum = 0; isxdigit(*s); ++s)
    if (isdigit(*s))
        sum = sum * 10 + *s - '0';
    else
        sum = sum * 10 + tolower(*s) + (10 - 'a');
```

See Also

isalnum, *isalpha*, *isdigit*, *islower*, *isupper*, *tolower*, *toupper*

Notes

If the argument is outside the range [-1, 255], the result is undefined.

isxdigit is packaged in the integer library.

labs

Description

Find long absolute value

Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
long labs(long l)
```

Function

labs obtains the absolute value of *l*. No check is made to see that the result can be properly represented.

Return Value

labs returns the absolute value of *l*, expressed as an **long int**.

Example

To print out a debit or credit balance:

```
printf("balance %ld%s\n",labs(bal),(bal < 0) ? "CR" : "");
```

See Also

abs, *fabs*

Notes

labs is packaged in the integer library.

ldexp

Description

Scale double exponent

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>

double ldexp(double x, int exp)
```

Function

ldexp multiplies the double x by two raised to the integer power exp .

Return Value

ldexp returns the double result $x * (1 << exp)$ expressed as a double floating value. If a range error occurs, *ldexp* returns **HUGE_VAL**.

Example

x	exp	ldexp(x, exp)
1.0	1	2.0
1.0	0	1.0
1.0	-1	0.5
0.0	0	0.0

See Also

frexp, *modf*

Notes

ldexp is packaged in the floating point library.

ldiv

Description

Long divide with quotient and remainder

Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
ldiv_t ldiv(long numer, long denom)
```

Function

ldiv divides the long integer *numer* by the long integer *denom* and returns the quotient and the remainder in a structure of type *ldiv_t*. The field *quot* contains the quotient and the field *rem* contains the remainder.

Return Value

ldiv returns a structure of type *ldiv_t* containing both quotient and remainder.

Example

To get minutes and seconds from a delay in seconds:

```
ldiv_t result;
result = ldiv(time, 60L);
min = result.quot;
sec = result.rem;
```

See Also

div

Notes

ldiv is packaged in the integer library.

log

Description

Natural logarithm

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double log(double x)
```

Function

log computes the natural logarithm of x to full double precision.

Return Value

log returns the closest internal representation to $\log(x)$, expressed as a double floating value. If the input argument is less than zero, or is too large to be represented, *log* returns zero.

Example

To compute the hyperbolic arccosine of x :

```
arccosh = log(x + sqrt(x * x - 1));
```

See Also

exp

Notes

log is packaged in the floating point library.

log10

Description

Common logarithm

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double log10(double x)
```

Function

log10 computes the common log of x to full double precision by computing the natural log of x divided by the natural log of 10. If the input argument is less than zero, a domain error will occur. If the input argument is zero, a range error will occur.

Return Value

log10 returns the nearest internal representation to $\log_{10} x$, expressed as a double floating value. If the input argument is less than or equal to zero, *log10* returns zero.

Example

To determine the number of digits in x , where x is a positive integer expressed as a double:

```
ndig = log10(x) + 1;
```

See Also

log

Notes

log10 is packaged in the floating point library.

longjmp

Description

Restore calling environment

Syntax

```
#include <setjmp.h>
void longjmp(jmp_buf env, int val)
```

Function

longjmp restores the environment saved in *env* by *setjmp*. If *env* has not been set by a call to *setjmp*, or if the caller has returned in the meantime, the resulting behavior is unpredictable.

All accessible objects have their values restored when *longjmp* is called, except for objects of storage class register, the values of which have been changed between the *setjmp* and *longjmp* calls.

Return Value

When *longjmp* returns, program execution continues as if the corresponding call to *setjmp* had returned the value *val*. *longjmp* cannot force *setjmp* to return the value zero. If *val* is zero, *setjmp* returns the value one.

Example

You can write a generic error handler as:

```
void handle(int err)
{
    extern jmp_buf env;
    longjmp(env, err);    /* return from setjmp */
}
```

See Also

setjmp

Notes

longjmp is packaged in the integer library.

malloc

Description

Allocate space on the heap

Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void *malloc(unsigned int nbytes)
```

Function

malloc allocates space on the heap for an item of size *nbytes*. The space allocated is guaranteed to be at least *nbytes* long, starting from the pointer returned, which is guaranteed to be on a proper storage boundary for an object of any type. The heap is grown as necessary. If space is exhausted, *malloc* returns a null pointer.

Return Value

malloc returns a pointer to the start of the allocated cell if successful; otherwise it returns NULL. The pointer returned may be assigned to an object of any type without casting.

Example

To allocate an array of ten doubles:

```
double *pd;
pd = malloc(10 * sizeof *pd);
```

See Also

calloc, *free*, *realloc*

Notes

malloc is packaged in the integer library.

max

Description

Test for maximum

Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
max(a,b)
```

Function

max obtains the maximum of its two arguments, *a* and *b*. Since *max* is implemented as a C preprocessor macro, its arguments can be any numerical type, and type coercion occurs automatically.

Return Value

max is a numerical rvalue of the form $((a < b) ? b : a)$, suitably parenthesized.

Example

To set a new maximum level:

```
hiwater = max(hiwater, level);
```

See Also

min

Notes

max is an extension to the proposed ANSI C standard.

max is a macro declared in the *<stdlib.h>* header file. You can use it by including *<stdlib.h>* with your program. Because it is a macro, *max* cannot be called from non-C programs, nor can its address be taken. Arguments with side effects may be evaluated other than once.

memchr

Description

Scan buffer for character

Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
void *memchr(void *s, int c, unsigned int n)
```

Function

memchr looks for the first occurrence of a specific character *c* in an *n* character buffer starting at *s*.

Return Value

memchr returns a pointer to the first character that matches *c*, or NULL if no character matches.

Example

To map *keybuf[]* characters into *subst[]* characters:

```
if ((t = memchr(keybuf, *s, KEYSIZ)) != NULL)
    *s = subst[t - keybuf];
```

See Also

strchr, *strcspn*, *strpbrk*, *strrchr*, *strspn*

Notes

memchr is packaged in the integer library.

memcmp

Description

Compare two buffers for lexical order

Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
int memcmp(void *s1, void *s2, unsigned int n)
```

Function

memcmp compares two text buffers, character by character, for lexical order in the character collating sequence. The first buffer starts at *s1*, the second at *s2*; both buffers are *n* characters long.

Return Value

memcmp returns a short integer greater than, equal to, or less than zero, according to whether *s1* is lexicographically greater than, equal to, or less than *s2*.

Example

To look for the string “*include*” in name:

```
if (memcmp(name, "include", 7) == 0)
    doinclude();
```

See Also

strcmp, *strncmp*

Notes

memcmp is packaged in the integer library.

memcpy

Description

Copy one buffer to another

Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
void *memcpy(void *s1, void *s2, unsigned int n)
```

Function

memcpy copies the first *n* characters starting at location *s2* into the buffer beginning at *s1*.

Return Value

memcpy returns **s1**.

Example

To place “*first string, second string*” in *buf[]*:

```
memcpy(buf, "first string", 12);
memcpy(buf + 13, ", second string", 15);
```

See Also

strcpy, *strncpy*

Notes

memcpy is packaged in the integer library.

memmove

Description

Copy one buffer to another

Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
void *memmove(void *s1, void *s2, unsigned int n)
```

Function

memmove copies the first n characters starting at location $s2$ into the buffer beginning at $s1$. If the two buffers overlap, the function performs the copy in the appropriate sequence, so the copy is not corrupted.

Return Value

memmove returns $s1$.

Example

To shift an array of characters:

```
memmove(buf, &buf[5], 10);
```

See Also

memcpy

Notes

memmove is packaged in the integer library.

memset

Description

Propagate fill character throughout buffer

Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
void *memset(void *s, int c, unsigned int n)
```

Function

memset floods the *n* character buffer starting at *s* with fill character *c*.

Return Value

memset returns *s*.

Example

To flood a 512-byte buffer with NULs:

```
memset(buf, '\0', BUFSIZ);
```

Notes

memset is packaged in the integer library.

min

Description

Test for minimum

Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
min(a,b)
```

Function

min obtains the minimum of its two arguments, *a* and *b*. Since *min* is implemented as a C preprocessor macro, its arguments can be any numerical type, and type coercion occurs automatically.

Return Value

min is a numerical rvalue of the form $((a < b) ? a : b)$, suitably parenthesized.

Example

To set a new minimum level:

```
nmove = min(space, size);
```

See Also

max

Notes

min is an extension to the ANSI C standard.

min is a macro declared in the *<stdlib.h>* header file. You can use it by including *<stdlib.h>* with your program. Because it is a macro, *min* cannot be called from non-C programs, nor can its address be taken. Arguments with side effects may be evaluated more than once.

modf

Description

Extract fraction and integer from double

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double modf(double val, double *pd)
```

Function

modf partitions the double *val* into an integer portion, which is delivered to **pd*, and a fractional portion, which is returned as the value of the function. If the integer portion cannot be represented properly in an **int**, the result is truncated on the left without complaint.

Return Value

modf returns the signed fractional portion of *val* as a double floating value, and writes the integer portion at **pd*.

Example

val	*pd	modf(val, *pd)
5.1	5	0.1
5.0	5	0.0
4.9	4	0.9
0.0	0	0.0
-1.4	-1	-0.4

See Also

frexp, *ldexp*

Notes

modf is packaged in the floating point library.

pow

Description

Raise *x* to the *y* power

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double pow(double x, double y)
```

Function

pow computes the value of *x* raised to the power of *y*.

Return Value

pow returns the value of *x* raised to the power of *y*, expressed as a double floating value. If *x* is zero and *y* is less than or equal to zero, or if *x* is negative and *y* is not an integer, *pow* returns zero.

Example

x	y	pow(x, y)
2.0	2.0	4.0
2.0	1.0	2.0
2.0	0.0	1.0
1.0	any	1.0
0.0	-2.0	0
-1.0	2.0	1.0
-1.0	2.1	0

See Also

exp

Notes

pow is packaged in the floating point library.

printf

Description

Output formatted arguments to stdout

Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
int printf(char *fmt,...)
```

Function

printf writes formatted output to the output stream using the format string at *fmt* and the arguments specified by ..., as described below.

printf uses *putchar* to output each character.

Format Specifiers

The format string at *fmt* consists of literal text to be output, interspersed with conversion specifications that determine how the arguments are to be interpreted and how they are to be converted for output. If there are insufficient arguments for the format, the results are undefined. If the format is exhausted while arguments remain, the excess arguments are evaluated but otherwise ignored. *printf* returns when the end of the format string is encountered.

Each *<conversion specification>* is started by the character ‘%’. After the ‘%’, the following appear in sequence:

<flags> - zero or more which modify the meaning of the conversion specification.

<field width> - a decimal number which optionally specifies a minimum field width. If the converted value has fewer characters than the field width, it is padded on the left (or right, if the left adjustment flag has been given) to the field width. The padding is with spaces unless the field width digit string starts with zero, in which case the padding is with zeros.

<precision> - a decimal number which specifies the minimum number of digits to appear for **d**, **i**, **o**, **u**, **x**, and **X** conversions, the number of digits to appear after the decimal point for **e**, **E**, and **f** conversions, the maximum number of significant digits for the **g** and **G** conversions, or the maximum number of characters to be printed from a string in an **s** conversion. The precision takes the form of a period followed by a decimal digit string. A null digit string is treated as zero.

h - optionally specifies that the following **d**, **i**, **o**, **u**, **x**, or **X** conversion character applies to a short int or unsigned short int argument (the argument will have been widened according to the integral widening conversions, and its value must be cast to short or unsigned short before printing). It specifies a short pointer argument if associated with the **p** conversion character. If an **h** appears with any other conversion character, it is ignored.

l - optionally specifies that the **d**, **i**, **o**, **u**, **x**, and **X** conversion character applies to a long int or unsigned long int argument. It specifies a long or far pointer argument if used with the **p** conversion character. If the **l** appears with any other conversion character, it is ignored.

L - optionally specifies that the following **e**, **E**, **f**, **g**, and **G** conversion character applies to a long double argument. If the **L** appears with any other conversion character, it is ignored.

<conversion character> - character that indicates the type of conversion to be applied.

A field width or precision, or both, may be indicated by an asterisk '*' instead of a digit string. In this case, an int argument supplies the field width or precision. The arguments supplying field width must appear before the optional argument to be converted. A negative field width argument is taken as a - flag followed by a positive field width. A negative precision argument is taken as if it were missing.

The **<flags>** field is zero or more of the following:

space - a space will be prepended if the first character of a signed conversion is not a sign. This flag will be ignored if space and + flags are both specified.

- result is to be converted to an “alternate form”. For **c**, **d**, **i**, **s**, and **u** conversions, the flag has no effect. For **o** conversion, it increases the precision to force the first digit of the result to be zero. For **p**, **x** and **X** conversion, a non-zero result will have **Ox** or **OX** prepended to it. For **e**, **E**, **f**, **g**, and **G** conversions, the result will contain a decimal point, even if no digits follow the point. For **g** and **G** conversions, trailing zeros will not be removed from the result, as they normally are. For **p** conversion, it designates hexadecimal output.

+ - result of signed conversion will begin with a plus or minus sign.

- - result of conversion will be left justified within the field.

The *<conversion character>* is one of the following:

% - a ‘%’ is printed. No argument is converted.

c - the least significant byte of the int argument is converted to a character and printed.

d, **i**, **o**, **u**, **x**, **X** - the **int** argument is converted to signed decimal (**d** or **i**), unsigned octal (**o**), unsigned decimal (**u**), or unsigned hexadecimal notation (**x** or **X**); the letters **abcdef** are used for **x** conversion and the letters **ABCDEF** are used for **X** conversion. The precision specifies the minimum number of digits to appear; if the value being converted can be represented in fewer digits, it will be expanded with leading zeros. The default precision is **1**. The result of converting a zero value with precision of zero is no characters.

e, **E** - the **double** argument is converted in the style **[-]d.ddde+dd**, where there is one digit before the decimal point and the number of digits after it is equal to the precision. If the precision is missing, six digits are produced; if the precision is zero, no decimal point appears. The **E** format code will produce a number with **E** instead of **e** introducing the exponent. The exponent always contains at least two digits. However, if the magnitude to be printed is greater than or equal to **1E+100**, additional exponent digits will be printed as necessary.

f - the **double** argument is converted to decimal notation in the style **[-]ddd.ddd**, where the number of digits following the decimal point is

equal to the precision specification. If the precision is missing, it is taken as 6. If the precision is explicitly zero, no decimal point appears. If a decimal point appears, at least one digit appears before it.

g, G - the **double** argument is printed in style **f** or **e** (or in style **E** in the case of a **G** format code), with the precision specifying the number of significant digits. The style used depends on the value converted; style **e** will be used only if the exponent resulting from the conversion is less than -4 or greater than the precision. Trailing zeros are removed from the result; a decimal point appears only if it is followed by a digit.

n - the argument is taken to be an *int* * pointer to an integer into which is written the number of characters written to the output stream so far by this call to *printf*. No argument is converted.

p - the argument is taken to be a *void* * pointer to an object. The value of the pointer is converted to a sequence of printable characters, and printed as a hexadecimal number with the number of digits printed being determined by the field width.

s - the argument is taken to be a *char* * pointer to a string. Characters from the string are written up to, but not including, the terminating NUL, or until the number of characters indicated by the precision are written. If the precision is missing, it is taken to be arbitrarily large, so all characters before the first NUL are printed.

If the character after ‘%’ is not a valid conversion character, the behavior is undefined.

If any argument is or points to an aggregate (except for an array of characters using **%s** conversion or any pointer using **%p** conversion), unpredictable results will occur.

A nonexistent or small field width does not cause truncation of a field; if the result is wider than the field width, the field is expanded to contain the conversion result.

Return Value

printf returns the number of characters transmitted, or a negative number if a write error occurs.

Notes

A call with more conversion specifiers than argument variables will cause unpredictable results.

Example

To print **arg**, which is a double with the value **5100.53**:

```
printf("%8.2f\n", arg);  
printf("%*.*f\n", 8, 2, arg);
```

both forms will output: **05100.53**

See Also

sprintf

Notes

printf is packaged in both the integer library and the floating point library. The functionality of the integer only version of *printf* is a subset of the functionality of the floating point version. The integer only version cannot print or manipulate floating point numbers. If your programs call the integer only version of *printf*, the following conversion specifiers are invalid: **e**, **E**, **f**, **g** and **G**. The **L** modifier is also invalid.

If *printf* encounters an invalid conversion specifier, the invalid specifier is ignored and no special message is generated.

putchar

Description

Put a character to output stream

Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
int putchar(c)
```

Function

putchar copies *c* to the user specified output stream.

You must rewrite *putchar* in either C or assembly language to provide an interface to the output mechanism to the C library.

Return Value

putchar returns *c*. If a write error occurs, *putchar* returns EOF.

Example

To copy input to output:

```
while ((c = getchar()) != EOF)
    putchar(c);
```

See Also

getchar

Notes

putchar is packaged in the integer library.

puts

Description

Put a text line to output stream

Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
int puts(char *s)
```

Function

puts copies characters from the buffer starting at *s* to the output stream and appends a newline character to the output stream.

puts uses *putchar* to output each character. The terminating NUL is not copied.

Return Value

puts returns zero if successful, or else nonzero if a write error occurs.

Example

To copy input to output, line by line:

```
while (puts(gets(buf)))
    ;
```

See Also

gets

Notes

puts is packaged in the integer library.

rand

Description

Generate pseudo-random number

Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
int rand(void)
```

Function

rand computes successive pseudo-random integers in the range [0, 32767], using a linear multiplicative algorithm which has a period of 2 raised to the power of 32.

Example

```
int dice()
{
    return (rand() % 6 + 1);
}
```

Return Value

rand returns a pseudo-random integer.

See Also

srand

Notes

rand is packaged in the integer library.

realloc

Description

Reallocate space on the heap

Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void *realloc(void *ptr, unsigned int nbytes)
```

Function

realloc grows or shrinks the size of the cell pointed to by *ptr* to the size specified by *nbytes*. The contents of the cell will be unchanged up to the lesser of the new and old sizes. The cell pointer *ptr* must have been obtained by an earlier *calloc*, *malloc*, or *realloc* call; otherwise the heap will become corrupted.

Return Value

realloc returns a pointer to the start of the possibly moved cell if successful. Otherwise *realloc* returns NULL and the cell and *ptr* are unchanged. The pointer returned may be assigned to an object of any type without casting.

Example

To adjust *p* to be *n* doubles in size:

```
p = realloc(p, n * sizeof(double));
```

See Also

calloc, *free*, *malloc*

Notes

realloc is packaged in the integer library.

sbreak

Description

Allocate new memory

Syntax

```
/* no header file need be included */  
void *sbreak(unsigned int size)
```

Function

sbreak modifies the program memory allocation as necessary, to make available at least *size* contiguous bytes of new memory, on a storage boundary adequate for representing any type of data. There is no guarantee that successive calls to *sbreak* will deliver contiguous areas of memory.

Return Value

sbreak returns a pointer to the start of the new memory if successful; otherwise the value returned is NULL.

Example

To buy space for an array of symbols:

```
if (!(p = sbreak(nsyms * sizeof (symbol))))  
    remark("not enough memory!", NULL);
```

Notes

sbreak is packaged in the integer library.

sbreak is an extension to the ANSI C standard.

scanf

Description

Read formatted input

Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
int scanf(char *fmt,...)
```

Function

scanf reads formatted input from the output stream using the format string at *fmt* and the arguments specified by ..., as described below.

scanf uses *getchar* to read each character.

The behavior is unpredictable if there are insufficient argument pointers for the format. If the format string is exhausted while arguments remain, the excess arguments are evaluated but otherwise ignored.

Format Specifiers

The format string may contain:

- any number of spaces, horizontal tabs, and newline characters which cause input to be read up to the next non-whitespace character, and
- ordinary characters other than ‘%’ which must match the next character of the input stream.

Each *<conversion specification>*, the definition of which follows, consists of the character ‘%’, an optional assignment-suppressing character ‘*’, an optional maximum field width, an optional **h**, **l** or **L** indicating the size of the receiving object, and a *<conversion character>*, described below.

A conversion specification directs the conversion of the next input field. The result is placed in the object pointed to by the subsequent argument, unless assignment suppression was indicated by a ‘*’. An input field is a string of non-space characters; it extends to the next conflicting character or until the field width, if specified, is exhausted.

The conversion specification indicates the interpretation of the input field; the corresponding pointer argument must be a restricted type. The *<conversion character>* is one of the following:

% - a single % is expected in the input at this point; no assignment occurs.

If the character after ‘%’ is not a valid conversion character, the behavior is undefined.

c - a character is expected; the subsequent argument must be of type pointer to char. The normal behavior (skip over space characters) is suppressed in this case; to read the next non-space character, use **%1s**. If a field width is specified, the corresponding argument must refer to a character array; the indicated number of characters is read.

d - a decimal integer is expected; the subsequent argument must be a pointer to integer.

e, f, g - a float is expected; the subsequent argument must be a pointer to float. The input format for floating point numbers is an optionally signed sequence of digits, possibly containing a decimal point, followed by an optional exponent field consisting of an **E** or **e**, followed by an optionally signed integer.

i - an integer is expected; the subsequent argument must be a pointer to integer. If the input field begins with the characters **0x** or **0X**, the field is taken as a hexadecimal integer. If the input field begins with the character **0**, the field is taken as an octal integer. Otherwise, the input field is taken as a decimal integer.

n - no input is consumed; the subsequent argument must be an *int ** pointer to an integer into which is written the number of characters read from the input stream so far by this call to *scanf*.

o - an octal integer is expected; the subsequent argument must be a pointer to integer.

p - a pointer is expected; the subsequent argument must be a *void ** pointer. The format of the input field should be the same as that pro-

duced by the **%p** conversion of *printf*. On any input other than a value printed earlier during the same program execution, the behavior of the **%p** conversion is undefined.

S - a character string is expected; the subsequent argument must be a *char ** pointer to an array large enough to hold the string and a terminating NUL, which will be added automatically. The input field is terminated by a space, a horizontal tab, or a newline, which is not part of the field.

u - an unsigned decimal integer is expected; the subsequent argument must be a pointer to integer.

x - a hexadecimal integer is expected; a subsequent argument must be a pointer to integer.

[- a string that is not to be delimited by spaces is expected; the subsequent argument must be a *char ** just as for **%s**. The left bracket is followed by a set of characters and a right bracket; the characters between the brackets define a set of characters making up the string. If the first character is not a circumflex '^', the input field consists of all characters up to the first character that is not in the set between the brackets; if the first character after the left bracket is a circumflex, the input field consists of all characters up to the first character that is in the set of the remaining characters between the brackets. A NUL character will be appended to the input.

The conversion characters **d**, **i**, **o**, **u** and **x** may be preceded by **l** to indicate that the subsequent argument is a pointer to long int rather than a pointer to int, or by **h** to indicate that it is a pointer to short int. Similarly, the conversion characters **e** and **f** may be preceded by **l** to indicate that the subsequent argument is a pointer to double rather than a pointer to float, or by **L** to indicate a pointer to long double.

The conversion characters **e**, **g** or **x** may be capitalized. However, the use of upper case has no effect on the conversion process and both upper and lower case input is accepted.

If conversion terminates on a conflicting input character, that character is left unread in the input stream. Trailing white space (including a

newline) is left unread unless matched in the control string. The success of literal matches and suppressed assignments is not directly determinable other than via the **%n** conversion.

Return Value

scanf returns the number of assigned input items, which can be zero if there is an early conflict between an input character and the format, or EOF if end of file is encountered before the first conflict or conversion.

Example

To be certain of a dubious request:

```
printf("are you sure?");
if (scanf("%c", &ans) && (ans == 'Y' || ans == 'y'))
    scrog();
```

See Also

sscanf

Notes

scanf is packaged in both the integer library and the floating point library. The functionality of the integer only version of *scanf* is a subset of the functionality of the floating point version. The integer only version cannot read or manipulate floating point numbers. If your programs call the integer only version of *scanf*, the following conversion specifiers are invalid: **e**, **f**, **g** and **p**. The **L** flag is also invalid.

If an invalid conversion specifier is encountered, it is ignored.

setjmp

Description

Save calling environment

Syntax

```
#include <setjmp.h>
int setjmp(jmp_buf env)
```

Function

setjmp saves the calling environment in *env* for later use by the *longjmp* function.

Since *setjmp* manipulates the stack, it should never be used except as the single operand in a switch statement.

Return Value

setjmp returns zero on its initial call, or the argument to a *longjmp* call that uses the same *env*.

Example

To call any event until it returns 0 or 1 and calls *longjmp*, which will then start execution at the function *event0* or *event1*:

```
static jmp_buf ev[2];

switch (setjmp(ev[0]))
{
case 0:          /* registered */
    break;
default:        /* event 0 occurred */
    event0();
    next();
}
switch (setjmp(ev[1]))
{
case 0:          /* registered */
    break;
default:        /* event 1 occurred */
    event1();
    next();
}
```

```
        }
    next();
    ...
next()
{
    int i;

    for (; ; )
    {
        i = anyevent();
        if (i == 0 || i == 1)
            longjmp(ev[i]);
    }
}
```

See Also

longjmp

Notes

setjmp is packaged in the integer library.

sin

Description

Sin

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double sin(double x)
```

Function

sin computes the sine of x , expressed in radians, to full double precision. If the magnitude of x is too large to contain a fractional quadrant part, the value of *sin* is 0.

Return Value

sin returns the closest internal representation to $\sin(x)$ in the range $[-\pi/2, \pi/2]$, expressed as a double floating value. A large argument may return a meaningless result.

Example

To rotate a vector through the angle *theta*:

```
xnew = xold * cos(theta) - yold * sin(theta);
ynew = xold * sin(theta) + yold * cos(theta);
```

See Also

cos, *tan*

Notes

sin is packaged in the floating point library.

sinh

Description

Hyperbolic sine

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double sinh(double x)
```

Function

sinh computes the hyperbolic sine of x to full double precision.

Return Value

sinh returns the closest internal representation to $\sinh(x)$, expressed as a double floating value. If the result is too large to be properly represented, *sinh* returns zero.

Example

To obtain the hyperbolic sine of complex **z**:

```
typedef struct
{
    double x, iy;
}complex;

complex z;

z.x = sinh(z.x) * cos(z.iy);
z.iy = cosh(z.x) * sin(z.iy);
```

See Also

cosh, *exp*, *tanh*

Notes

sinh is packaged in the floating point library.

sprintf

Description

Output arguments formatted to buffer

Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
int sprintf(char *s, char fmt,...)
```

Function

sprintf writes formatted to the buffer pointed at by *s* using the format string at *fmt* and the arguments specified by ..., in exactly the same way as *printf*. See the description of the *printf* function for information on the format conversion specifiers. A NUL character is written after the last character in the buffer.

Return Value

sprintf returns the numbers of characters written, not including the terminating NUL character.

Example

To format a double at *d* into *buf*:

```
sprintf(buf, "%10f\n", d);
```

See Also

printf

Notes

sprintf is packaged in both the integer library and the floating point library. The functionality of the integer only version of *sprintf* is a subset of the functionality of the floating point version. The integer only version cannot print or manipulate floating point numbers. If your programs call the integer only version of *sprintf*, the following conversion specifiers are invalid: **e**, **E**, **f**, **g** and **G**. The **L** flag is also invalid.

sqrt

Description

Real square root

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double sqrt(double x)
```

Function

sqrt computes the square root of x to full double precision.

Return Value

sqrt returns the nearest internal representation to \sqrt{x} , expressed as a double floating value. If x is negative, *sqrt* returns zero.

Example

To use *sqrt* to check whether $n > 2$ is a prime number:

```
if (!(n & 01))
    return (NOTPRIME);
sq = sqrt((double)n);
for (div = 3; div <= sq; div += 2)
    if (!(n % div))
        return (NOTPRIME);
return (PRIME);
```

Notes

sqrt is packaged in the floating point library.

srand

Description

Seed pseudo-random number generator

Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
void srand(unsigned char nseed)
```

Function

srand uses *nseed* as a seed for a new sequence of pseudo-random numbers to be returned by subsequent calls to *rand*. If *srand* is called with the same seed value, the sequence of pseudo-random numbers will be repeated. The initial seed value used by *rand* and *srand* is 0.

Return Value

Nothing.

Example

To set up a new sequence of random numbers:

```
srand(103);
```

See Also

rand

Notes

srand is packaged in the integer library.

sscanf

Description

Read formatted input from a string

Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
int sscanf(schar *, char *fmt,...)
```

Function

sscanf reads formatted input from the NUL-terminated string pointed at by *s* using the format string at *fmt* and the arguments specified by ..., in exactly the same way as *scanf*. See the description of the *scanf* function for information on the format conversion specifiers.

Return Value

sscanf returns the number of assigned input items, which can be zero if there is an early conflict between an input character and the format, or EOF if the end of the string is encountered before the first conflict or conversion.

See Also

scanf

Notes

sscanf is packaged in both the integer library and the floating point library. The functionality of the integer only version of *sscanf* is a subset of the functionality of the floating point version. The integer only version cannot print or manipulate floating point numbers. If your programs call the integer only version of *sscanf*, the following conversion specifiers are invalid: **e**, **f**, **g** and **p**. The **L** flag is also invalid.

strcat

Description

Concatenate strings

Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
char *strcat(char *s1, char *s2)
```

Function

strcat appends a copy of the NUL terminated string at *s2* to the end of the NUL terminated string at *s1*. The first character of *s2* overlaps the NUL at the end of *s1*. A terminating NUL is always appended to *s1*.

Return Value

strcat returns *s1*.

Example

To place the strings “*first string, second string*” in *buf[]*:

```
buf[0] = '\0';
strcpy(buf, "first string");
strcat(buf, ", second string");
```

See Also

strncat

Notes

There is no way to specify the size of the destination area to prevent storage overwrites.

strcat is packaged in the integer library.

strchr

Description

Scan string for first occurrence of character

Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
char *strchr(char *s, int c)
```

Function

strchr looks for the first occurrence of a specific character *c* in a NUL terminated target string *s*.

Return Value

strchr returns a pointer to the first character that matches *c*, or NULL if none does.

Example

To map *keystr[]* characters into *subst[]* characters:

```
if (t = strchr(keystr, *s))
    *s = subst[t - keystr];
```

See Also

memchr, *strcspn*, *strpbrk*, *strrchr*, *strspn*

Notes

strchr is packaged in the integer library.

strcmp

Description

Compare two strings for lexical order

Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
int strcmp(char *s1, char *s2)
```

Function

strcmp compares two text strings, character by character, for lexical order in the character collating sequence. The first string starts at *s1*, the second at *s2*. The strings must match, including their terminating NUL characters, in order for them to be equal.

Return Value

strcmp returns an integer greater than, equal to, or less than zero, according to whether *s1* is lexicographically greater than, equal to, or less than *s2*.

Example

To look for the string “include”:

```
if (strcmp(buf, "include") == 0)
    doinclude();
```

See Also

memcmp, *strncmp*

Notes

strcmp is packaged in the integer library.

strcpy

Description

Copy one string to another

Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
char *strcpy(char *s1, char *s2)
```

Function

strcpy copies the NUL terminated string at *s2* to the buffer pointed at by *s1*. The terminating NUL is also copied.

Return Value

strcpy returns *s1*.

Example

To make a copy of the string *s2* in *dest*:

```
strcpy(dest, s2);
```

See Also

memcpy, *strncpy*

Notes

There is no way to specify the size of the destination area, to prevent storage overwrites.

strcpy is packaged in the integer library.

strcspn

Description

Find the end of a span of characters in a set

Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
unsigned int strcspn(char *s1, char *s2)
```

Function

strcspn scans the string starting at *s1* for the first occurrence of a character in the string starting at *s2*. It computes a subscript *i* such that:

- **s1[i]** is a character in the string starting at **s1**
- **s1[i]** compares equal to some character in the string starting at **s2**, which may be its terminating null character.

Return Value

strcspn returns the lowest possible value of **i**. **s1[i]** designates the terminating null character if none of the characters in **s1** are in **s2**.

Example

To find the start of a decimal constant in a text string:

```
if (!str[i = strcspn(str, "0123456789+-")])
    printf("can't find number\n");
```

See Also

memchr, *strchr*, *strpbrk*, *strrchr*, *strspn*

Notes

strcspn is packaged in the integer library.

strlen

Description

Find length of a string

Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
unsigned int strlen(char *s)
```

Function

strlen scans the text string starting at *s* to determine the number of characters before the terminating NUL.

Return Value

The value returned is the number of characters in the string before the NUL.

Notes

strlen is packaged in the integer library.

strncat

Description

Concatenate strings of length *n*

Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
char *strncat(char *s1, char *s2, unsigned int n)
```

Function

strncat appends a copy of the NUL terminated string at *s2* to the end of the NUL terminated string at *s1*. The first character of *s2* overlaps the NUL at the end of *s1*. *n* specifies the maximum number of characters to be copied, unless the terminating NUL in *s2* is encountered first. A terminating NUL is always appended to *s1*.

Return Value

strncat returns **s1**.

Example

To concatenate the strings “*day*” and “*light*”:

```
strcpy(s, "day");
strncat(s + 3, "light", 5);
```

See Also

strcat

Notes

strncat is packaged in the integer library.

strncmp

Description

Compare two *n* length strings for lexical order

Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
int strncmp(char *s1, char *s2, unsigned int n)
```

Function

strncmp compares two text strings, character by character, for lexical order in the character collating sequence. The first string starts at *s1*, the second at *s2*. *n* specifies the maximum number of characters to be compared, unless the terminating NUL in *s1* or *s2* is encountered first. The strings must match, including their terminating NUL character, in order for them to be equal.

Return Value

strncmp returns an integer greater than, equal to, or less than zero, according to whether *s1* is lexicographically greater than, equal to, or less than *s2*.

Example

To check for a particular error message:

```
if (strncmp(errmsg,
            "can't write output file", 23) == 0)
    cleanup(errmsg);
```

See Also

memcmp, *strcmp*

Notes

strncmp is packaged in the integer library.

strncpy

Description

Copy *n* length string

Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
char *strncpy(char *s1, char *s2, unsigned int n)
```

Function

strncpy copies the first *n* characters starting at location *s2* into the buffer beginning at *s1*. *n* specifies the maximum number of characters to be copied, unless the terminating NUL in *s2* is encountered first. In that case, additional NUL padding is appended to *s2* to copy a total of *n* characters.

Return Value

strncpy returns *s1*.

Example

To make a copy of the string *s2* in *dest*:

```
strncpy(dest, s2, n);
```

See Also

memcpy, *strcpy*

Notes

If the string *s2* points at is longer than *n* characters, the result may not be NUL-terminated.

strncpy is packaged in the integer library.

strupbrk

Description

Find occurrence in string of character in set

Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
char *strupbrk(char *s1, char *s2)
```

Function

strupbrk scans the NUL terminated string starting at *s1* for the first occurrence of a character in the NUL terminated set *s2*.

Return Value

strupbrk returns a pointer to the first character in *s1* that is also contained in the set *s2*, or a NULL if none does.

Example

To replace unprintable characters (as for a 64 character terminal):

```
while (string = strupbrk(string, "`{|}~"))
    *string = '@';
```

See Also

memchr, *strchr*, *strcspn*, *strrchr*, *strspn*

Notes

strupbrk is packaged in the integer library.

strrchr

Description

Scan string for last occurrence of character

Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
char *strrchr(char *s,int c)
```

Function

strrchr looks for the last occurrence of a specific character *c* in a NUL terminated string starting at *s*.

Return Value

strrchr returns a pointer to the last character that matches *c*, or NULL if none does.

Example

To find a filename within a directory pathname:

```
if (s = strrchr("/usr/lib/libc.user", '/'))
    ++s;
```

See Also

memchr, *strchr*, *strpbrk*, *strcspn*, *strspn*

Notes

strrchr is packaged in the integer library.

strspn

Description

Find the end of a span of characters not in set

Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
unsigned int strspn(char *s1, char *s2)
```

Function

strspn scans the string starting at *s1* for the first occurrence of a character not in the string starting at *s2*. It computes a subscript *i* such that

- **s1[i]** is a character in the string starting at **s1**
- **s1[i]** compares equal to no character in the string starting at **s2**, except possibly its terminating null character.

Return Value

strspn returns the lowest possible value of **i**. **s1[i]** designates the terminating null character if all of the characters in **s1** are in **s2**.

Example

To check a string for characters other than decimal digits:

```
if (str[strspn(str, "0123456789")])
    printf("invalid number\n");
```

See Also

memchr, *strcspn*, *strchr*, *strpbrk*, *strrchr*

Notes

strspn is packaged in the integer library.

strstr

Description

Scan string for first occurrence of string

Syntax

```
#include <string.h>
char *strstr(char *s1, char *s2)
```

Function

strstr looks for the first occurrence of a specific string *s2* not including its terminating NUL, in a NUL terminated target string *s1*.

Return Value

strstr returns a pointer to the first character that matches *c*, or NULL if none does.

Example

To look for a keyword in a string:

```
if (t = strstr(buf, "LIST"))
    do_list(t);
```

See Also

memchr, *strcspn*, *strpbrk*, *strchr*, *strspn*

Notes

strstr is packaged in the integer library.

strtod

Description

Convert buffer to double

Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
double strtod(char *nptr, char **endptr)
```

Function

strtod converts the string at *nptr* into a double. The string is taken as the text representation of a decimal number, with an optional fraction and exponent. Leading whitespace is skipped and an optional sign is permitted; conversion stops on the first unrecognizable character. Acceptable inputs match the pattern:

[+|-]d*.[d*][e[+|-]dd*]

where **d** is any decimal digit and **e** is the character ‘e’ or ‘E’. If *endptr* is not a null pointer, **endptr* is set to the address of the first unconverted character remaining in the string *nptr*. No checks are made against overflow, underflow, or invalid character strings.

Return Value

strtod returns the converted double value. If the string has no recognizable characters, it returns zero.

Example

To read a string from STDIN and convert it to a double at *d*:

```
gets(buf);
d = strtod(buf, NULL);
```

See Also

atoi, *atol*, *strtol*, *strtoul*

Notes

strtod is packaged in the floating point library.

strtol

Description

Convert buffer to long

Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
long strtol(char *nptr, char **endptr, int base)
```

Function

strtol converts the string at *nptr* into a long integer. Leading whitespace is skipped and an optional sign is permitted; conversion stops on the first unrecognizable character. If base is not zero, characters **a-z** or **A-Z** represents digits in range 10-36. If base is zero, a leading “**0x**” or “**0X**” in the string indicates hexadecimal, a leading “**0**” indicates octal, otherwise the string is take as a decimal representation. If base is 16 and a leading “**0x**” or “**0X**” is present, it is skipped before to convert. If *endptr* is not a null pointer, **endptr* is set to the address of the first unconverted character in the string *nptr*.

No checks are made against overflow or invalid character strings.

Return Value

strtol returns the converted long integer. If the string has no recognizable characters, zero is returned.

Example

To read a string from STDIN and convert it to a long *l*:

```
gets(buf);
l = strtol(buf, NULL, 0);
```

See Also

atof, *atoi*, *strtoul*, *strtod*

Notes

strtol is packaged in the integer library.

strtoul

Description

Convert buffer to unsigned long

Syntax

```
#include <stdlib.h>
unsigned long strtoul(char *nptr, char **endptr,
                     int base)
```

Function

strtoul converts the string at *nptr* into a long integer. Leading whitespace is skipped and an optional sign is permitted; conversion stops on the first unrecognizable character. If base is not zero, characters **a-z** or **A-Z** represents digits in range 10-36. If base is zero, a leading “**0x**” or “**0X**” in the string indicates hexadecimal, a leading “**0**” indicates octal, otherwise the string is take as a decimal representation. If base is 16 and a leading “**0x**” or “**0X**” is present, it is skipped before to convert. If *endptr* is not a null pointer, **endptr* is set to the address of the first unconverted character in the string *nptr*.

No checks are made against overflow or invalid character strings.

Return Value

strtoul returns the converted long integer. If the string has no recognizable characters, zero is returned.

Example

To read a string from STDIN and convert it to a long *l*:

```
gets(buf);
l = strtoul(buf, NULL, 0);
```

See Also

atof, *atoi*, *strtol*, *strtod*

Notes

strtoul is a macro redefined to *strtol*.

tan

Description

Tangent

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double tan(double x)
```

Function

tan computes the tangent of x , expressed in radians, to full double precision.

Return Value

tan returns the nearest internal representation to $\tan(x)$, in the range $[-\pi/2, \pi/2]$, expressed as a double floating value. If the number in x is too large to be represented, *tan* returns zero. An argument with a large size may return a meaningless value, *i.e.* when $x / (2 * \pi)$ has no fraction bits.

Example

To compute the tangent of *theta*:

```
y = tan(theta);
```

See Also

cos, *sin*

Notes

tan is packaged in the floating point library.

tanh

Description

Hyperbolic tangent

Syntax

```
#include <math.h>
double tanh(double x)
```

Function

tanh computes the value of the hyperbolic tangent of x to double precision.

Return Value

tanh returns the nearest internal representation to $\tanh(x)$, expressed as a double floating value. If the result is too large to be properly represented, *tanh* returns zero.

Example

To compute the hyperbolic tangent of x :

```
y = tanh(x);
```

See Also

cosh, *exp*, *sinh*

Notes

tanh is packaged in the floating point library.

tolower

Description

Convert character to lower-case if necessary

Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int tolower(int c)
```

Function

tolower converts an upper-case letter to its lower-case equivalent, leaving all other characters unmodified.

Return Value

tolower returns the corresponding lower-case letter, or the unchanged character.

Example

To accumulate a hexadecimal digit:

```
for (sum = 0; isxdigit(*s); ++s)
    if (isdigit(*s)
        sum = sum * 16 + *s - '0';
    else
        sum = sum * 16 + tolower(*s) + (10 - 'a');
```

See Also

toupper

Notes

tolower is packaged in the integer library.

toupper

Description

Convert character to upper-case if necessary

Syntax

```
#include <ctype.h>
int toupper(int c)
```

Function

toupper converts a lower-case letter to its upper-case equivalent, leaving all other characters unmodified.

Return Value

toupper returns the corresponding upper-case letter, or the unchanged character.

Example

To convert a character string to upper-case letters:

```
for (i = 0; i < size; ++i)
    buf[i] = toupper(buf[i]);
```

See Also

tolower

Notes

toupper is packaged in the integer library.

va_arg

Description

Get pointer to next argument in list

Syntax

```
#include <stdarg.h>
type va_arg(va_list ap, type)
```

Function

The macro **va_arg** is an *rvalue* that computes the value of the next argument in a variable length argument list. Information on the argument list is stored in the array data object *ap*. You must first initialize *ap* with the macro *va_start*, and compute all earlier arguments in the list by expanding *va_arg* for each argument.

The type of the next argument is given by the type name *type*. The type name must be the same as the type of the next argument. Remember that the compiler widens an arithmetic argument to int, and converts an argument of type float to double. You write the type after conversion. Write *int* instead of *char* and *double* instead of *float*.

Do not write a type name that contains any parentheses. Use a type definition, if necessary, as in:

```
typedef int (*pfi)();
/* pointer to function returning int */
...
fun_ptr = va_arg(ap, pfi);
/* get function pointer argument */
```

Return Value

va_arg expands to an *rvalue* of type *type*. Its value is the value of the next argument. It alters the information stored in *ap* so that the next expansion of *va_arg* accesses the argument following.

Example

To write multiple strings to a file:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdarg.h>

main()
{
    void strput();
    strput(pf, "This is one string\n", \
           "and this is another...\n", (char *)0);
}

void strput(FILE *pf,...);
void strput(char *ptr,...)
void strput(ptr)
    char *ptr;
    {
        char ptr;
        va_list va;

        if (!ptr)
            return;
        else
            {
                puts(ptr);
                va_start(va, ptr);
                while (ptr = va_arg(va, char *))
                    puts(ptr);
                va_end(va);
            }
    }
```

See Also

va_end, *va_start*

Notes

va_arg is a macro declared in the *<stdarg.h>* header file. You can use it with any function that accepts a variable number of arguments, by including *<stdarg.h>* with your program.

va_end

Description

Stop accessing values in an argument list

Syntax

```
#include <stdarg.h>
void va_end(va_list ap)
```

Function

va_end is a macro which you must expand if you expand the macro *va_start* within a function that contains a variable length argument list. Information on the argument list is stored in the data object designated by *ap*. Designate the same data object in both *va_start* and *va_end*.

You expand *va_end* after you have accessed all argument values with the macro *va_arg*, before your program returns from the function that contains the variable length argument list. After you expand *va_end*, do not expand *va_arg* with the same *ap*. You need not expand *va_arg* within the function that contains the variable length argument list.

You must write an expansion of *va_end* as an expression statement containing a function call. The call must be followed by a semicolon.

Return Value

Nothing. *va_end* expands to a statement, not an expression.

Example

To write multiple strings to a file:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdarg.h>

main()
{
    void strtput();

    strtput(pf, "This is one string\n", \
            "and this is another...\n", (char *)0);
}
```



```
void strput(FILE *pf,...);
void strput(char *ptr,...)
void strput(ptr)
    char *ptr;
    {
    char ptr;
    va_list va;

    if (!ptr)
        return;
    else
        {
        puts(ptr);
        va_start(va, ptr);
        while (ptr = va_arg(va, char *))
            puts(ptr);
        va_end(va);
        }
    }
```

See Also

va_arg, va_start

Notes

va_end is a macro declared in the *<stdarg.h>* header file. You can use it with any function that accepts a variable number of arguments, by including *<stdarg.h>* with your program.

va_start

Description

Start accessing values in an argument list

Syntax

```
#include <stdarg.h>
void va_start(va_list ap, parmN)
```

Function

va_start is a macro which you must expand before you expand the macro *va_arg*. It initializes the information stored in the data object designated by *ap*. The argument *parmN* must be the identifier you declare as the name of the last specified argument in the variable length argument list for the function. In the function prototype for the function, *parmN* is the argument name you write just before the ,...

The type of *parmN* must be one of the types assumed by an argument passed in the absence of a prototype. Its type must not be float or char. Also, *parmN* cannot have storage class register.

If you expand *va_start*, you must expand the macro *va_end* before your program returns from the function containing the variable length argument list.

You must write an expansion of *va_start* as an expression statement containing a function call. The call must be followed by a semicolon.

Return Value

Nothing. *va_start* expands to a statement, not an expression.

Example

To write multiple strings to a file:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdarg.h>

main()
{
```

```
void strput();
strput(pf, "This is one string\n", \
        "and this is another...\n", (char *)0);
}

void strput(FILE *pf,...);
void strput(char *ptr,...)
void strput(ptr)
    char *ptr;
    {
    char ptr;
    va_list va;

    if (!ptr)
        return;
    else
        {
        puts(ptr);
        va_start(va, ptr);
        while (ptr = va_arg(va, char *))
            puts(ptr);
        va_end(va);
        }
    }
```

See Also

va_arg, *va_end*

Notes

va_start is a macro declared in the *<stdarg.h>* header file. You can use it with any function that accepts a variable number of arguments, by including *<stdarg.h>* with your program.

vprintf

Description

Output arguments formatted to stdout

Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdarg.h>
int vprintf(char *s, char fmt, va_list ap)
```

Function

vprintf writes formatted to the output stream using the format string at *fmt* and the arguments specified by pointer *ap*, in exactly the same way as *printf*. See the description of the *printf* function for information on the format conversion specifiers. The *va_start* macro must be executed before to call the *vprintf* function.

vprintf uses *putchar* to output each character.

Return Value

vprintf returns the numbers of characters transmitted.

Example

To format a double at *d* into *buf*:

```
va_start(aptr, fmt);
vprintf(fmt, aptr);
```

See Also

printf, *vsprintf*

Notes

vprintf is packaged in both the integer library and the floating point library. The functionality of the integer only version of *vprintf* is a subset of the functionality of the floating point version. The integer only version cannot print floating point numbers. If your programs call the integer only version of *vprintf*, the following conversion specifiers are invalid: **e**, **E**, **f**, **g** and **G**. The **L** flag is also invalid.

vsprintf

Description

Output arguments formatted to buffer

Syntax

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdarg.h>
int vsprintf(char *s, char fmt, va_list ap)
```

Function

vsprintf writes formatted to the buffer pointed at by *s* using the format string at *fmt* and the arguments specified by pointer *ap*, in exactly the same way as *printf*. See the description of the *printf* function for information on the format conversion specifiers. A NUL character is written after the last character in the buffer. The *va_start* macro must be executed before to call the *vsprintf* function.

Return Value

vsprintf returns the numbers of characters written, not including the terminating NUL character.

Example

To format a double at *d* into *buf*:

```
va_start(aptr, fmt);
vsprintf(buf, fmt, aptr);
```

See Also

printf, *vprintf*

Notes

vsprintf is packaged in both the integer library and the floating point library. The functionality of the integer only version of *vsprintf* is a subset of the functionality of the floating point version. The integer only version cannot print floating point numbers. If your programs call the integer only version of *vsprintf*, the following conversion specifiers are invalid: **e**, **E**, **f**, **g** and **G**. The **L** flag is also invalid.

CHAPTER 5

Using The Assembler

The **ca6811** cross assembler translates your assembly language source files into relocatable object files. The C cross compiler calls *ca6811* to assemble your code automatically, unless specified otherwise. *ca6811* generates also listings if requested. This chapter includes the following sections:

- Invoking **ca6811**
- Object File
- Listings
- Assembly Language Syntax
- Branch Optimization
- Old Syntax
- C Style Directives
- Directives

Invoking *ca6811*

ca6811 accepts the following command line options, each of which is described in detail below:

```
ca6811 [options] <files>
-a    absolute assembler
-b    do not optimizes branches
-c    output cross reference
-d*>  define symbol=value
+e*   error file name
-ff   use formfeed in listing
-ft   force title in listing
-f#   fill byte value
-h*   include header
-i*>  include path
-l    output a listing
+l*   listing file name
-m    accept old syntax
-mi   accept label syntax
-o*   output file name
-pe   all equates public
-pl   keep local symbol
-p    all symbols public
-u    undefined in listing
-v    be verbose
-x    include line debug info
-xp   no path in debug info
-xx   include full debug info
```

- a** map all sections to absolute, including the predefined ones.
- b** do not optimize branch instructions. By default, the assembler replaces long branches by short branches wherever a shorter instruction can be used, and short branches by long branches wherever the displacement is too large. This optimization also applies to jump and jump to subroutines instructions.
- c** produce cross-reference information. The cross-reference information will be added at the end of the listing file. This option enforces the **-l** option.

- d*>** where * has the form **name=value**, defines **name** to have the value specified by **value**. This option is equivalent to using an **equ** directive in each of the source files.
- +e*** log errors from assembler in the text file * instead of displaying the messages on the terminal screen.
- ff** use *formfeed* character to skip pages in listing instead of using blank lines.
- ft** output a title in listing (date, file name, page). By default, no title is output.
- f#** define the value of the filling byte used to fill any gap created by the assembler directives. Default is 0.
- h*** include the file specified by * before starting assembly. It is equivalent to an **include** directive in each source file.
- i*>** define a path to be used by the **include** directive. Up to 20 paths can be defined. A path is a directory name and is **not** ended by any directory separator character.
- l** create a listing file. The name of the listing file is derived from the input file name by replacing the suffix by the *.ls* extension, unless the **+l** option has been specified.
- +l*** create a listing file in the text file *. If both **-l** and **+l** are specified, the listing file name is given by the **+l** option.
- m** accept the old Motorola syntax.
- mi** accept label that is not ended with a *':'* character.
- o*** write object code to the file *. If no file name is specified, the output file name is derived from the input file name, by replacing the rightmost extension in the input file name with the character *'o'*. For example, if the input file name is *prog.s*, the default output file name is *prog.o*.

- pe** mark all symbols defined by an **equ** directive as **public**. This option has the same effect than adding a **xdef** directive for each of those symbols.
- pl** put locals in the symbol table. They are not published as externals and will be only displayed in the linker map file.
- p** mark all defined symbols as **public**. This option has the same effect than adding a **xdef** directive for each label.
- u** produce an error message in the listing file for all occurrence of an undefined symbol. This option enforces the **-l** option.
- v** display the name of each file which is processed.
- x** add line debug information to the object file.
- xp** do not prefix filenames in the debug information with any absolute path name. Debuggers will have to be informed about the actual files location.
- xx** add debug information in the object file for any label defining code or data. This option disables the **-p** option as only public or used labels are selected.

Each source file specified by *<files>* will be assembled separately, and will produce separate object and listing files. For each source file, if no errors are detected, *ca6811* generates an object file. If requested by the **-l** or **-c** options, *ca6811* generates a listing file even if errors are detected. Such lines are followed by an error message in the listing.

Object File

The object file produced by the assembler is a relocatable object in a format suitable for the linker *clnk*. This will normally consist of machine code, initialized data and relocation information. The object file also contains information about the sections used, a symbol table, and a debug symbol table.

Listings

The listing stream contains the source code used as input to the assembler, together with the hexadecimal representation of the corresponding object code and the address for which it was generated. The contents of the listing stream depends on the occurrence of the **list**, **nolist**, **clist**, **dlist** and **mlist** directives in the source. The format of the output is as follows:

`<address> <generated_code> <source_line>`

where `<address>` is the hexadecimal relocatable address where the `<source_line>` has been assembled, `<generated_code>` is the hexadecimal representation of the object code generated by the assembler and `<source_line>` is the original source line input to the assembler. If expansion of data, macros and included files is not enabled, the `<generated_code>` print will not contain a complete listing of all generated code.

Addresses in the listing output are the offsets from the start of the current section. After the linker has been executed, the listing files may be updated to contain absolute information by the **clabs** utility. Addresses and code will be updated to reflect the actual values as built by the linker.

Several directives are available to modify the listing display, such as **title** for the page header, **plen** for the page length, **page** for starting a new page, **tabs** for the tabulation characters expansion. By default, the listing file is not paginated. Pagination is enabled by using at least one **title** directive in the source file, or by specifying the **-ft** option on the command line. Otherwise, the **plen** and **page** directives are simply ignored. Some other directives such as **clist**, **mlist** or **dlist** control the amount of information produced in the listing.

A **cross-reference** table will be appended to the listing if the **-c** option has been specified. This table gives for each symbol its value, its attributes, the line number of the line where it has been defined, and the list of line numbers where it is referenced.

Assembly Language Syntax

The assembler *ca6811* conforms to the Motorola syntax as described in the document *Assembly Language Input Standard*. The assembly language consists of lines of text in the form:

```
[label:] [command [operands]] [; comment]
or
; comment
```

where ‘:’ indicates the end of a label and ‘;’ defines the start of a comment. The end of a line terminates a comment. The *command* field may be an **instruction**, a **directive** or a **macro call**.

Instruction mnemonics and assembler directives may be written in upper or lower case. The C compiler generates lowercase assembly language.

A source file must end with the **end** directive. All the following lines will be ignored by the assembler. If an **end** directive is found in an included file, it stops only the process for the included file.

Instructions

ca6811 recognizes the following instructions:

aba	bge	cba	dey	lslb	rol	suba
abx	bgt	clc	eora	lsld	rola	subb
aby	bhi	cli	eorb	lsr	rolb	subd
adca	bhs	clr	fdiv	lsra	ror	swi
adcb	bita	clra	idiv	lsrb	rora	tab
adda	bitb	clrb	inc	lsrd	rorb	tap
addb	ble	clv	inca	mul	rti	tba
addd	blo	cmpa	incb	neg	rts	test
anda	bls	cmpb	ins	nega	sba	tpa
andb	blt	com	inx	negb	sbca	tst
asl	bmi	coma	iny	nop	sbcab	tsta
asla	bne	comb	jmp	oraa	sec	tstb
aslb	bpl	cpd	jsr	orab	sei	tsx
asld	bra	cpx	ldaa	psha	sev	tsy
asr	brclr	cpy	ldab	pshb	staa	txs
asra	brn	daa	ldd	pshx	stab	tys
asrb	brset	dec	lds	pshy	std	wai
bcc	bset	deca	ldx	pula	stop	xgdx
bclr	bsr	decb	ldy	pulb	sts	xgdy

bcs	bvc	des	lsl	pulx	stx
beq	bvs	dex	lsll	puly	sty

The **operand** field of an instruction uses an addressing mode to describe the instruction argument. The following example demonstrates the accepted syntax:

tpa					; implicit
ldaa	#1				; immediate
anda	var				; direct or extended
add	,x				; indexed
orab	0,x				; indexed
bne	loop				; relative
bset	var,2				; bit number
brset	var,2,loop				; bit test and branch

The assembler chooses the smallest addressing mode where several solutions are possible. *Direct* addressing mode is selected when using a label defined in the **.bsct** section.

For an exact description of the above instructions, refer to the Motorola's *M68HC11 Reference Manual*.

Labels

A source line may begin with a label. Some directives require a label on the same line, otherwise this field is optional. A label must begin with an alphabetic character, the underscore character '_' or the period character '.'. It is continued by alphabetic (A-Z or a-z) or numeric (0-9) characters, underscores, dollar signs (\$) or periods. Labels are case sensitive. The processor register names '*a*', '*b*', '*x*' and '*y*' are reserved and cannot be used as labels.

```
data1: dc.b    $56
c_reg: ds.b    1
```

When a label is used within a macro, it may be expanded more than once and in that case, the assembler will fail with a *multiply defined symbol* error. In order to avoid that problem, the special sequence '@' may be used as a label prefix. This sequence will be replaced by a unique sequence for each macro expansion. This prefix is only allowed inside a macro definition.

```
wait:    macro
\@loop: brset    PORTA,1,\@loop
        endm
```

Temporary Labels

The assembler allows temporary labels to be defined when there is no need to give them an explicit name. Such a label is composed by a decimal number immediately followed by a ‘\$’ character. Such a label is valid until the next standard label or the *local* directive. Then the same temporary label may be redefined without getting a multiply defined error message.

```
1$:      decb
        bne 1$
2$:      decb
        bne 2$
```

Temporary labels do not appear in the symbol table or the cross reference list.

For example, to define 3 different local blocks and create and use 3 different local labels named 10\$:

```
function1:
10$:     ldab     var
        beq      10$
        stab     var2
        local
10$:     ldaa     var2
        beq      10$
        staa     var
        rts
function2:
10$:     ldaa     var2
        suba     var
        bne      10$
        rts
```

Constants

The assembler accepts **numeric** constants and **string** constants. *Numeric* constants are expressed in different bases depending on a *prefix* character as follows:

Number	Base
10	decimal (no prefix)
%1010	binary
@12	octal
\$A	hexadecimal

The assembler also accepts numerics constants in different bases depending on a *suffix* character as follow:

Suffix	Base
D, d or none	decimal (no prefix)
B or b	binary
Q or q	octal
0AH or 0Ah	hexadecimal

The suffix letter can be entered upper case or lower case. Hexadecimal numbers still need to start with a digit.

String constants are a series of printable characters between single or double quote characters:

```
'This is a string'
"This is also a string"
```

Depending on the context, a string constant will be seen either as a series of bytes, for a data initialization, or as a numeric; in which case, the string constant should be reduced to only one character.

```
hexa:  dc.b    '0123456789ABCDEF'
start:  cmpa    #'A'      ; ASCII value of 'A'
```

Expressions

An expression consists of a number of labels and constants connected together by operators. Expressions are evaluated to 32-bit precision. Note that operators have the same precedence than in the C language.

A special label written ‘*’ is used to represent the current location address. Note that when ‘*’ is used as the operand of an instruction, it has the value of the program counter **before** code generation for that instruction. The set of accepted operators is:

+	addition
-	subtraction (negation)
*	multiplication
/	division
%	remainder (modulus)
&	bitwise and
	bitwise or
^	bitwise exclusive or
~	bitwise complement
<<	left shift
>>	right shift
==	equality
!=	difference
<	less than
<=	less than or equal
>	greater than
>=	greater than or equal
&&	logical and
	logical or
!	logical complement

These operators may be applied to constants without restrictions, but are restricted when applied to *relocatable* labels. For those labels, the **addition** and **subtraction** operators only are accepted and only in the following cases:

```
label + constant
label - constant
label1 - label2
```

NOTE

The difference of two relocatable labels is valid only if both symbols are not external symbols, and are defined in the same section.

An expression may also be constructed with a special operator. These expressions cannot be used with the previous operators and have to be specified alone.

high(expression)	upper byte
low(expression)	lower byte
page(expression)	page byte

These special operators evaluate an **expression** and extract the appropriate information from the result. The expression may be relocatable, and may use the set of operators if allowed.

high - extract the upper byte of the 16-bit expression

low - extract the lower byte of the 16-bit expression

page - extract the *page* value of the expression. It is computed by the linker according to the **-bs** option used. This is used to get the address extension when bank switching is used.

Macro Instructions

A **macro** instruction is a list of assembler commands collected under a unique name. This name becomes a new command for the following of the program. A **macro** begins with a **macro** directive and ends with a **endm** directive. All the lines between these two directives are recorded and associated with the macro name specified with the **macro** directive.

```
signex: macro           ; sign extension
    clra                ; prepare MSB
    tstb                ; test sign
    bpl    \@pos        ; if not positive
    coma                ; invert MSB
\@pos:
    endm                ; end of macro
```

This macro is named *signex* and contains the code needed to perform a sign extension of **a** into **x**. Whenever needed, this macro can be expanded just by using its name in place of a standard instruction:

```
ldab    char+1    ; load LSB
signex          ; expand macro
std     char      ; store result
```

The resulting code will be the same as if the following code had been written:

```

        ldab    char+1    ; load LSB
        clra     ; prepare MSB
        tstb     ; test sign
        bpl     pos      ; if not positive
        coma     ; invert MSB
pos:
        std     char      ; store result

```

A **macro** may have up to 35 *parameters*. A *parameter* is written **|1**, **|2**,... **|9**,**|A**,...**|Z** inside the macro body and refers explicitly to the first, second,... ninth *argument* and **|A** to **|Z** to denote the tenth to 35th operand on the invocation line, which are placed after the macro name, and separated by commas. Each *argument* replaces each occurrence of its corresponding *parameter*. An *argument* may be expressed as a **string** constant if it contains a comma character.

A macro can also handle named arguments instead of numbered argument. In such a case, the macro directive is followed by a list of argument named, each prefixed by a **|** character, and separated by commas. Inside the macro body, arguments will be specified using the same syntax or a sequence starting by a **|** character followed by the argument named placed between parenthesis. This alternate syntax is useful to concatenate the argument with a text string immediately starting with alphanumeric characters.

The special *parameter* **|#** is replaced by a numeric value corresponding to the number of *arguments* actually found on the invocation line.

In order to operate directly in memory, the previous macro may have been written using the **numbered** syntax:

```

signex: macro                ; sign extension
        clra     ; prepare MSB
        ldab     \1+1        ; load LSB
        bpl     \@pos      ; if not positive
        coma     ; invert MSB
\@pos:  std      \1          ; store MSB
        endm             ; end of macro

```

And called:

```
signex char      ; sign extend char
```

This macro may also be written using the **named** syntax:

```
signex: macro    \value ; sign extension
                  clra    ; prepare MSB
                  ldab    \value ; load LSB
                  bpl     \@pos ; if not positive
                  coma     ; invert MSB
\@pos: std       \(\value); store MSB
endm            ; end of macro
```

The syntax of a macro call is:

name>[.<ext>] [<arguments>]

The special parameter **\0** corresponds to an extension *<ext>* which may follow the macro name, separated by the period character ‘.’. An extension is a single letter which may represent the size of the operands and the result. For example:

```
table: macro
      dc.\0    1,2,3,4
      endm
```

When invoking the macro:

```
table.b
```

will generate a table of byte:

```
dc.b    1,2,3,4
```

When invoking the macro:

```
table.w
```

will generate a table of word:

```
dc.w    1,2,3,4
```

The special parameter `*` is replaced by a sequence containing the list of all the passed arguments separated by commas. This syntax is useful to pass all the macro arguments to another macro or a **repeatl** directive.

The directive **mexit** may be used at any time to stop the macro expansion. It is generally used in conjunction with a conditional directive.

A macro call may be used within another macro definition. A macro definition cannot contain another macro definition.

If a listing is produced, the macro expansion lines are printed if enabled by the **mlist** directive. If enabled, the invocation line is not printed, and all the expanded lines are printed with all the *parameters* replaced by their corresponding *arguments*. Otherwise, the invocation line only is printed.

Conditional Directives

A **conditional directive** allows parts of the program to be assembled or not depending on a specific condition expressed in an **if** directive. The condition is an expression following the **if** command. The expression cannot be relocatable, and shall evaluate to a numeric result. If the condition is *false* (expression evaluated to zero), the lines following the **if** directive are skipped until an **endif** or **else** directive. Otherwise, the lines are normally assembled. If an **else** directive is encountered, the condition status is reversed, and the conditional process continues until the next **endif** directive.

```
if      debug == 1
ldx     #message
jsr     print
endif
```

If the symbol `debug` is equal to 1, the next two lines are assembled. Otherwise they are skipped.

```
if      offset != 1      ; if offset too large
addptr  offset           ; call a macro
else
inx      ; otherwise
endif      ; increment X register
```

If the symbol `offset` is not one, the macro `addptr` is expanded with `offset` as argument, otherwise the `inx` instruction is directly assembled.

Conditional directives may be nested. An **else** directive refers to the closest previous **if** directive, and an **endif** directive refers to the closest previous **if** or **else** directive.

If a listing is produced, the skipped lines are printed only if enabled by the **clist** directive. Otherwise, only the assembled lines are printed.

Sections

The assembler allows code and data to be splitted in **sections**. A *section* is a set of code or data referenced by a section name, and providing a contiguous block of relocatable information. A *section* is defined with a *section* directive, which creates a new section and redirects the following code and data thereto. The directive **switch** can be used to redirect the following code and data to another *section*.

```
data:    section           ; defines data section
text:    section           ; defines text section
start:
        ldx    #value    ; fills text section
        jmp    print
        switch data    ; use now data section
value:
        dc.b   1,2,3    ; fills data section
```

The assembler allows up to **255** different sections. A section name is limited to **15** characters. If a section name is too long, it is simply truncated without any error message.

The assembler predefines the following sections, meaning that a *section* directive is *not* needed before to use them:

Section	Description
.text	executable code
.data	initialized data
.bss	uninitialized data
.bsct	initialized data in zero page
.ubsct	uninitialized data in zero page

The sections **.bsct** and **.ubsct** are used for locating data in the zero page of the processor. The zero page is defined as the memory addresses between **0x00** and **0xFF** inclusive, i.e. the memory directly addressable by a single byte. Several processors include special instructions and/or addressing modes that take advantage of this special address range. The Cosmic assembler will automatically use the most efficient addressing mode if the data objects are allocated in the **.bsct**, **.ubsct** or a section with the same attributes. If zero page data objects are defined in another file then the directive **xref.b** must be used to externally reference the data object. This directive specifies that the address for these data object is only one byte and therefore the assembler may use 8 bit addressing modes.

The operator “>” may optionally be used to force the assembler to use extended addressing instead of direct addressing for addressing zero page objects.

```
xref          var
xref.b        zvar
              switch .bsct
zvar2:        ds.b 1
              switch .bss
var2:         ds.b 1
              switch .text
              ldaa   var
              ldaa   zvar
              ldaa   var2
              ldaa   var2
              end
```

Includes

The **include** directive specifies a file to be included and assembled in place of the **include** directive. The file name is written between double quotes, and may be any character string describing a file on the host system. If the file cannot be found using the given name, it is searched from all the include paths defined by the **-i** options on the command line, and from the paths defined by the environment symbol **CXLIB**, if such a symbol has been defined before the assembler invocation. This symbol may contain several paths separated by the usual path separator of the host operating system (‘;’ for MSDOS and ‘:’ for UNIX).

The **-h** option can specify a file to be “included”. The file specified will be included as if the program had an **include** directive at its very top. The specified file will be included before **any** source file specified on the command line.

Branch Optimization

Branch instructions are by default automatically optimized to produce the shortest code possible. This behaviour may be disabled by the **-b** option. This optimization operates on conditional branches, on jumps and jumps to subroutine.

A *conditional* branch offset is limited to the range [-128,127]. If such an instruction cannot be encoded properly, the assembler will replace it by a sequence containing an inverted branch to the next location followed immediately by a jump to the original target address. The assembler keep track of the last replacement for each label, so if a long branch has already been expanded for the same label at a location close enough from the current instruction, the target address of the short branch will be changed only to branch on the already existing jump instruction to the specified label.

```
beq    farlabel    becomes    bne    *+5
                                jmp    farlabel
```

Note that a *bra* instruction will be replaced by a single *jmp* instruction if it cannot be encoded as a relative branch.

A *jmp* or *jsr* instruction will be replaced by a *bra* or *bsr* instruction if the destination address is in the same section than the current one, and if the displacement is in the range allowed by a relative branch.

Old Syntax

The **-m** option allows the assembler to accept old constructs which are now obsolete. The following features are added to the standard behaviour:

- a label starting in the first column does not need to be ended with a ‘:’ character;

- a comment line may begin with a ‘*’ character;
- no error message is issued if an operand of the **dc.b** directive is too large;
- the **section** directive handles *numbered* sections;

The comment separator at the end of an instruction is still the ‘;’ character because the ‘*’ character is interpreted as the multiply operator.

C Style Directives

The assembler also supports C style directives matching the preprocessor directives of a C compiler. The following directives list shows the equivalence with the standard directives:

C Style	Assembler Style
#include “file”	include “file”
#define label expression	label: equ expression
#define label	label: equ 1
#if expression	if expression
#ifdef label	ifdef label
#ifndef label	ifndef label
#else	else
#endif	endif
#error “message”	fail “message”

NOTE

The #define directive does not implement all the text replacement features provided by a C compiler. It can be used only to define a symbol equal to a numerical value.

Directives

This section consists of quick reference descriptions for each of the *ca6811* assembler directives.

align

Description

Align the next instruction on a given boundary

Syntax

```
align <expression>,[<fill_value>]
```

Function

The **align** directive forces the next instruction to start on a specific boundary. The **align** directive is followed by a constant expression which must be positive. The next instruction will start at the next address which is a multiple of the specified value. If bytes are added in the section, they are set to the value of the filling byte defined by the **-f** option. If **<fill_value>**, is specified, it will be used locally as the filling byte, instead of the one specified by the **-f** option.

Example

```
align    3           ; next address is multiple of 3
ds.b     1
```

See Also

even

base

Description

Define the default base for numerical constants

Syntax

```
base <expression>
```

Function

The **base** directive sets the default base for numerical constants beginning with a digit. The **base** directive is followed by a constant expression which value must be one of **2**, **8**, **10** or **16**. The decimal base is used by default. When another base is selected, it is no more possible to enter decimal constants.

Example

```
base      8           ; select octal base
ldaa     #377        ; load $FF
```

bsct

Description

Switch to the predefined **.bsct** section.

Syntax

```
bsct
```

Function

The **bsct** directive switches input to a section named **.bsct**, also known as the **zero page** section. The assembler will automatically select the direct addressing mode when referencing an object defined in the *.bsct* section.

Example

```
        bsct
c_reg:  ds.b    1
```

Notes

The *.bsct* section is limited to 256 bytes, but the assembler does not check the *.bsct* section size. This will be done by the linker.

See Also

section, switch

clist

Description

Turn listing of conditionally excluded code on or off.

Syntax

```
clist [on|off]
```

Function

The **clist** directive controls the output in the listing file of conditionally excluded code. It is effective if and only if listings are requested; it is ignored otherwise.

The parts of the program to be listed are the program lines which are not assembled as a consequence of **if**, **else** and **endif** directives.

See Also

if, else, endif

dc

Description

Allocate constant(s)

Syntax

```
dc[.size] <expression>[,<expression>...]
```

Function

The **dc** directive allocates and initializes storage for constants. If *<expression>* is a string constant, one byte is allocated for each character of the string. Initialization can be specified for each item by giving a series of values separated by commas or by using a repeat count.

The **dc** and **dc.b** directives will allocate one byte per *<expression>*.

The **dc.w** directive will allocate one word per *<expression>*.

The **dc.l** directive will allocate one long word per *<expression>*.

Example

```
digit: dc.b    10, '0123456789'  
      dc.w    digit
```

Note

For compatibility with previous assemblers, the directive **fcb** is alias to **dc.b**, and the directive **fdb** is alias to **dc.w**.

dcb

Description

Allocate constant block

Syntax

```
dcb.<size> <count>,<value>
```

Function

The **dcb** directive allocates a memory block and initializes storage for constants. The size area is the number of the specified value *<count>* of *<size>*. The memory area can be initialized with the *<value>* specified.

The **dcb** and **dcb.b** directives will allocate one **byte** per *<count>*.

The **dcb.w** directive will allocate one **word** per *<count>*.

The **dcb.l** directive will allocate one **long word** per *<count>*.

Example

```
digit: dcb.b    10,5    ; allocate 10 bytes,  
                        ; all initialized to 5
```

dlist

Description

Turn listing of debug directives on or off.

Syntax

```
dlist [on|off]
```

Function

The **dlist** directive controls the visibility of any debug directives in the listing. It is effective if and only if listings are requested; it is ignored otherwise.

ds

Description

Allocate variable(s)

Syntax

```
ds[.size] <space>
```

Function

The **ds** directive allocates storage space for variables. *<space>* must be an absolute expression. Bytes created are set to the value of the filling byte defined by the **-f** option.

The **ds** and **ds.b** directives will allocate *<space>* bytes.

The **ds.w** directive will allocate *<space>* words.

The **ds.l** directive will allocate *<space>* long words.

Example

```
ptlec: ds.b    2
ptecr: ds.b    2
chrbuf: ds.w   128
```

Note

For compatibility with previous assemblers, the directive **rmb** is alias to **ds.b**.

else

Description

Conditional assembly

Syntax

```
if <expression>
instructions
else
instructions
endif
```

Function

The **else** directive follows an **if** directive to define an alternative conditional sequence. It reverts the condition status for the following instructions up to the next matching **endif** directive. An **else** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

Example

```
if      offset != 1      ; if offset too large
addptr  offset          ; call a macro
else    ; otherwise
inx     ; increment X register
endif
```

Note

The **else** and **elsec** directives are equivalent and may be used without distinction. They are provided for compatibility with previous assemblers.

See Also

if, endif, clist

elsec

Description

Conditional assembly

Syntax

```
if <expression>
instructions
elsec
instructions
endc
```

Function

The **elsec** directive follows an **if** directive to define an alternative conditional sequence. It reverts the condition status for the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** directive. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

Example

```
ifge    offset-127      ; if offset too large
addptr  offset          ; call a macro
elsec                   ; otherwise
inx                      ; increment X register
endc
```

Note

The **elsec** and **else** directives are equivalent and may be used without distinction. They are provided for compatibility with previous assemblers.

See Also

if, endc, clist, else

end

Description

Stop the assembly

Syntax

end

Function

The **end** directive stops the assembly process. Any statements following it are ignored. If the **end** directive is encountered in an included file, it will stop the assembly process for the included file only.

endc

Description

End conditional assembly

Syntax

```
if<cc> <expression>
instructions
endc
```

Function

The **endc** directive closes an **if<cc>** or **elsec** conditional directive. The conditional status reverts to the one existing before entering the **if<cc>** directives. The **endc** directive applies to the closest previous **if<cc>** or **elsec** directive.

Example

```
ifge    offset-127      ; if offset too large
addptr  offset          ; call a macro
elsec   ; otherwise
inx     ; increment X register
endc
```

Note

The **endc** and **endif** directives are equivalent and may be used without distinction. They are provided for compatibility with previous assemblers.

See Also

if<cc>, elsec, clist, end

endif

Description

End conditional assembly

Syntax

```
if <expression>
instructions
endif
```

Function

The **endif** directive closes an **if** or **else** conditional directive. The conditional status reverts to the one existing before entering the **if** directive. The **endif** directive applies to the closest previous **if** or **else** directive.

Example

```
if      offset != 1      ; if offset too large
addptr offset           ; call a macro
else    ; otherwise
inx     ; increment X register
endif
```

Note

The **endif** and **endc** directives are equivalent and may be used without distinction. They are provided for compatibility with previous assemblers.

See Also

if, else, clist

endm

Description

End macro definition

Syntax

```
label: macro
    <macro_body>
endm
```

Function

The **endm** directive is used to terminate macro definitions.

Example

```
; define a macro that places the length of
; a string in a byte prior to the string

ltext: macro
    ds.b    \@2 - \@1

\@1:
    ds.b    \1

\@2:
    endm
```

See Also

mexit, macro

endr

Description

End repeat section

Syntax

```
repeat  
<macro_body>  
endr
```

Function

The **endr** directive is used to terminate *repeat* sections.

Example

```
; shift a value n times  
asln: macro  
    repeat \1  
    aslb  
    endr  
endm  
  
; use of above macro  
asln 10 ;shift 10 times
```

See Also

repeat

equ

Description

Give a permanent value to a symbol

Syntax

```
label: equ <expression>
```

Function

The **equ** directive is used to associate a permanent value to a symbol (label). Symbols declared with the **equ** directive may not subsequently have their value altered otherwise the **set** directive should be used. *<expression>* must be either a constant expression, or a relocatable expression involving a symbol declared in the same section as the current one.

Example

```
false: equ 0    ; initialize these values
true:  equ 1
tablen: equ tabfin - tabsta    ;compute table length
nul:   equ $0  ; define strings for ascii characters
soh:   equ $1
stx:   equ $2
etx:   equ $3
eot:   equ $4
enq:   equ $5
```

See Also

set

even

Description

Assemble next byte at the next even address relative to the start of a section.

Syntax

```
even [<fill_value>]
```

Function

The **even** directive forces the next assembled byte to the next even address. If a bytes is added to the section, it is set to the value of the filling byte defined by the **-f** option. If **<fill_value>**, is specified, it will be used locally as the filling byte, instead of the one specified by the **-f** option.

Example

```
vowtab: dc.b    'aeiou'
         even    ; ensure aligned at even address
tentab: dc.w    1, 10, 100, 1000
```

fail

Description

Generate error message.

Syntax

```
fail "string"
```

Function

The **fail** directive outputs “*string*” as an error message. No output file is produced as this directive creates an assembly error. *fail* is generally used with conditional directives.

Example

```
Max:    equ     512
        ifge    value - Max
        fail    "Value too large"
```

if

Description

Conditional assembly

Syntax

<code>if <expression></code>	or	<code>if <expression></code>
<code>instructions</code>		<code>instructions</code>
<code>endif</code>		<code>else</code>
		<code>instructions</code>
		<code>endif</code>

Function

The **if**, **else** and **endif** directives allow conditional assembly. The **if** directive is followed by a constant expression. If the result of the expression is **not** zero, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endif** or **else** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endif** or **else** directive are skipped.

If the **if** statement ends with an **else** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endif**. So, if the **if** expression was **not** zero, the instructions between **else** and **endif** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **else** and **endif** are assembled. An **else** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

Example

```
if      offset != 1      ; if offset too large
addptr  offset           ; call a macro
else    ; otherwise
inx     ; increment X register
endif
```

See Also

else, endif, clist

ifc

Description

Conditional assembly

Syntax

ifc <string1>,<string2>	or ifc <string1>,<string2>
instructions	instructions
endc	elsec
	instructions
	endc

Function

The **ifc**, **elsec** and **endc** directives allow conditional assembly. The **ifc** directive is followed by a constant expression. If <string1> and <string2> are equals, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive are skipped.

If the **ifc** statement ends with an **elsec** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endc**. So, if the **ifc** expression was **not** zero, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are assembled. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

Example

```
ifc      "hello", \2      ; if "hello" equals argument
ldab     #45              ; load 45
elsec    ; otherwise...
ldab     #0
endc
```

See Also

elsec, endc, clist

ifdef

Description

Conditional assembly

Syntax

ifdef <label>	or	ifdef <label>
instructions		instructions
endc		elsec
		instructions
		endc

Function

The **ifdef**, **elsec** and **endc** directives allow conditional assembly. The **ifdef** directive is followed by a label <label>. If <label> is defined, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive are skipped. <label> must be first defined. It cannot be a forward reference.

If the **ifdef** statement ends with an **elsec** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endif**. So, if the **ifdef** expression was **not** zero, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are assembled. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not be in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

Example

```

ifdef   offset1           ; if offset1 is defined
addptr  offset1           ; call a macro
elsec   ; otherwise
addptr  offset2           ; call a macro
endif

```

See Also

ifndef, elsec, endc, clist

ifeq

Description

Conditional assembly

Syntax

ifeq <expression> instructions endc	or	ifeq <expression> instructions elsec instructions endc
---	----	---

Function

The **ifeq**, **elsec** and **endc** directives allow conditional assembly. The **ifeq** directive is followed by a constant expression. If the result of the expression is **equal** to zero, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive are skipped.

If the **ifeq** statement ends with an **elsec** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endc**. So, if the **ifeq** expression is **equal** to zero, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are assembled. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

Example

```
ifeq    offset           ; if offset nul
tsta                                ; just test it
elsec                                ; otherwise
adda    #offset          ; add to accu
endc
```

See Also

elsec, endc, clist

ifge

Description

Conditional assembly

Syntax

ifge <expression>	or	ifge <expression>
instructions		instructions
endc		elsec
		instructions
		endc

Function

The **ifge**, **elsec** and **endc** directives allow conditional assembly. The **ifge** directive is followed by a constant expression. If the result of the expression is **greater or equal** to zero, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive are skipped.

If the **ifge** statement ends with an **elsec** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endc**. So, if the **ifge** expression is **greater or equal** to zero, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are assembled. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

Example

```

ifge    offset-127      ; if offset too large
addptr  offset          ; call a macro
elsec   ; otherwise
inx     ; increment X register
endc

```

See Also

elsec, endc, clist

ifgt

Description

Conditional assembly

Syntax

<code>ifgt <expression></code>	or	<code>ifgt <expression></code>
<code>instructions</code>		<code>instructions</code>
<code>endc</code>		<code>elsec</code>
		<code>instructions</code>
		<code>endc</code>

Function

The **ifgt**, **elsec** and **endc** directives allow conditional assembly. The **ifgt** directive is followed by a constant expression. If the result of the expression is **greater than** zero, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive are skipped.

If the **ifgt** statement ends with an **elsec** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endc**. So, if the **ifgt** expression was **greater** than zero, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are assembled. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

Example

```
ifgt      offset-127      ; if offset too large
addptr   offset          ; call a macro
elsec     ; otherwise
inx      ; increment X register
endc
```

See Also

elsec, endc, clist

ifl

Description

Conditional assembly

Syntax

ifl <expression> instructions endc	or	ifl <expression> instructions elsec instructions endc
--	----	--

Function

The **ifl**, **elsec** and **endc** directives allow conditional assembly. The **ifl** directive is followed by a constant expression. If the result of the expression is **less or equal** to zero, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive are skipped.

If the **ifl** statement ends with an **elsec** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endc**. So, if the **ifl** expression was **less or equal** to zero, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are assembled. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

Example

```

ifl      offset-127      ; if offset small enough
inx      ; increment X register
elsec    ; otherwise
addptr   offset          ; call a macro
endc

```

See Also

elsec, endc, clist

iflt

Description

Conditional assembly

Syntax

iflt <expression> instructions endc	or	iflt <expression> instructions elsec instructions endc
---	----	---

Function

The **iflt**, **else** and **endc** directives allow conditional assembly. The **iflt** directive is followed by a constant expression. If the result of the expression is **less than** zero, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive are skipped.

If the **iflt** statement ends with an **elsec** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endc**. So, if the **iflt** expression was **less than** zero, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are assembled. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

Example

```
iflt      offset-127      ; if offset small enough
inx                               ; increment X register
elsec                               ; otherwise
addptr   offset          ; call a macro
endc
```

See Also

elsec, endc, clist

ifnc

Description

Conditional assembly

Syntax

ifnc <string1>,string2>	or ifnc <string1><string2>
instructions	instructions
endc	elsec
	instructions
	endc

Function

The **ifnc**, **elsec** and **endc** directives allow conditional assembly. The **ifnc** directive is followed by a constant expression. If <string1> and <string2> are different, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive are skipped.

If the **ifnc** statement ends with an **elsec** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endc**. So, if the **ifnc** expression was **not** zero, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are assembled. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

Example

```

ifnc      "hello", \2
addptr   offset          ; call a macro
else      ; otherwise
inx      ; increment X register
endif

```

See Also

elsec, endc, clist

ifndef

Description

Conditional assembly

Syntax

ifndef <label> instructions endc	or	ifndef <label> instructions elsec instructions endc
--	-----------	--

Function

The **ifndef**, **else** and **endc** directives allow conditional assembly. The **ifndef** directive is followed by a label <label>. If <label> is not defined, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive are skipped. <label> must be first defined. It cannot be a forward reference.

If the **ifndef** statement ends with an **elsec** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endif**. So, if the **ifndef** expression was **not** zero, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are assembled. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not be in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

Example

```
ifndef  offset1           ; if offset1 is not defined
addptr  offset2           ; call a macro
elsec                   ; otherwise
addptr  offset1           ; call a macro
endif
```

See Also

ifdef, elsec, endc, clist

ifne

Description

Conditional assembly

Syntax

ifne <expression>	or	ifne <expression>
instructions		instructions
endc		elsec
		instructions
		endc

Function

The **ifne**, **elsec** and **endc** directives allow conditional assembly. The **ifne** directive is followed by a constant expression. If the result of the expression is **not equal** to zero, the following instructions are assembled up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive; otherwise, the following instructions up to the next matching **endc** or **elsec** directive are skipped.

If the **ifne** statement ends with an **elsec** directive, the expression result is inverted and the same process applies to the following instructions up to the next matching **endc**. So, if the **ifne** expression was **not equal** to zero, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are skipped; otherwise, the instructions between **elsec** and **endc** are assembled. An **elsec** directive applies to the closest previous **if** directive.

The **if** directives may be nested. The skipped lines may or may not in the listing depending on the **clist** directive status.

Example

```

ifne    offset           ; if offset not nul
adda    #offset          ; add to accu
elsec   ; otherwise
tsta    ; just test it
endc

```

See Also

elsec, endc, clist

include

Description

Include text from another text file

Syntax

```
include "filename"
```

Function

The **include** directive causes the assembler to switch its input to the specified *filename* until end of file is reached, at which point the assembler resumes input from the line following the **include** directive in the current file. The directive is followed by a string which gives the name of the file to be included. This string must match exactly the name and extension of the file to be included; the host system convention for uppercase/lowercase characters should be respected.

Example

```
include "datstr" ; use data structure library
include "bldstd" ; use current build standard
include "matmac" ; use maths macros
include "ports82" ; use ports definition
```

list

Description

Turn on listing during assembly.

Syntax

<code>list</code>

Function

The **list** directive controls the parts of the program which will be written to the listing file. It is effective if and only if listings are requested; it is ignored otherwise.

Example

```
list      ; expand source code until end or nolist
dc.b     1,2,4,8,16
end
```

See Also

nolist

local

Description

Create a new local block

Syntax

```
local
```

Function

The **local** directive is used to create a new local block. When the *local* directive is used, all temporary labels defined before the local directive will be undefined after the local label. New local labels can then be defined in the new local block. Local labels can only be referenced within their own local block. A local label block is the area between two standard labels or local directives or a combination of the two.

Example

```
var:      ds.b 1
var2:     ds.b 1
function1:
10$:      ldab     var
          beq      10$
          stab     var2

local
10$:      ldaa     var2
          beq      10$
          staa     var
          rts
```


macro

Description

Define a macro

Syntax

```
label: macro  
    <macro_body>  
endm
```

Function

The **macro** directive is used to define a macro. The name may be any previously unused name, a name already used as a macro, or an instruction mnemonic for the microprocessor.

Macros are expanded when the name of a previously defined macro is encountered. Operands, where given, follow the name and are separated from each other by commas.

The *<argument_list>* is optional and, if specified, is declaring each argument by name. Each argument name is prefixed by a `\` character, and separated from any other name by a comma. An argument name is an identifier which may contain `.` and `_` characters.

The *<macro_body>* consists of a sequence of instructions not including the directives **macro** or **endm**. It may contain macro variables which will be replaced, when the macro is expanded, by the corresponding operands following the macro invocation. These macro variables take the form `\1` to `\9` to denote the first to ninth operand respectively and `\A` to `\Z` to denote the tenth to 35th operand respectively, if the macro has been defined without any *<argument_list>*. Otherwise, macro variables are denoted by their name prefixed by a `\` character. The macro variable name can also be enclosed by parenthesis to avoid unwanted concatenation with the remaining text. In addition, the macro variable `\#` contains the number of actual operands for a macro invocation.

The special parameter `*` is expanded to the full list of passed arguments separated by commas.

The special parameter `\0` corresponds to an extension `<ext>` which may follow the macro name, separated by the period character `'.'`. For more information, see [*“Macro Instructions” on page 195*](#).

A macro expansion may be terminated early by using the **mexit** directive which, when encountered, acts as if the end of the macro has been reached.

The sequence `'\@'` may be prepended to a label in order to allow a unique name expansion. The sequence `'\@'` will be replaced by a unique number.

A macro can not be defined within another macro.

Example

```
; define a macro that places the length of a string
; in a byte in front of the string using numbered syntax
;
ltext: macro
    dc.b    \@2-\@1

\@1:
    dc.b    \1 ; text given as first operand
\@2:
    endm

; define a macro that places the length of a string
; in a byte in front of the string using named syntax
;
ltext: macro    \string
    dc.b    \@2-\@1

\@1:
    dc.b    \string ; text given as first operand
\@2:
    endm
```

See Also

endm, mexit

messg

Description

Send a message out to STDOUT

Syntax

```
messg "<text>"  
messg '<text>'
```

Function

The **messg** directive is used to send a message out to the host system's standard output (STDOUT).

Example

```
messg "Test code for debug"  
    ldaa    _#2  
    staa    _SCR
```

See Also

title

mexit

Description

Terminate a macro definition

Syntax

```
mexit
```

Function

The **mexit** directive is used to exit from a macro definition before the **endm** directive is reached. *mexit* is usually placed after a conditional assembly directive.

Example

```
ctrace: macro
    if tflag == 0
        mexit
    endif
    jsr \1
endm
```

See Also

endm, macro

mlist

Description

Turn on or off listing of macro expansion.

Syntax

```
mlist [on|off]
```

Function

The **mlist** directive controls the parts of the program which will be written to the listing file produced by a macro expansion. It is effective if and only if listings are requested; it is ignored otherwise.

The parts of the program to be listed are the lines which are assembled in a macro expansion.

See Also

macro

nolist

Description

Turn off listing.

Syntax

```
nolist
```

Function

The **nolist** directive controls the parts of the program which will be **not** written to the listing file until an **end** or a **list** directive is encountered. It is effective if and only if listings are requested; it is ignored otherwise.

See Also

list

Note

For compatibility with previous assemblers, the directive **nol** is alias to **nolist**.

nopage

Description

Disable pagination in the listing file

Syntax

nopage

Function

The **nopage** directive stops the pagination mechanism in the listing output. It is ignored if no listing has been required.

Example

```
xref    mult, div
nopage
ds.b    charin, charout
ds.w    a, b, sum
```

See Also

plen, title

offset

Description

Creates absolute symbols

Syntax

```
offset <expression>
```

Function

The *offset* directive starts an absolute section which will only be used to define symbols, and not to produce any code or data. This section starts at the address specified by *<expression>*, and remains active while no directive or instructions producing code or data is entered. This absolute section is then destroyed and the current section is restored to the one which was active when the *offset* directive has been entered. All the labels defined in this section become absolute symbols.

<expression> must be a valid absolute expression. It must not contain any forward or external references.

Example

```
offset 0
next:
    ds.b    2
buffer:
    ds.b    80

switch .text
size:
    ldym   next,x ; ends the offset section
```


org

Description

Sets the location counter to an offset from the beginning of a section.

Syntax

```
org <expression>
```

Function

<expression> must be a valid absolute expression. It must not contain any forward or external references.

For an absolute section, the first *org* before any code or data defines the starting address.

An *org* directive cannot define an address smaller than the location counter of the current section.

Any gap created by an *org* directive is filled with the byte defined by the **-f** option.

page

Description

Start a new page in the listing file

Syntax

```
page
```

Function

The **page** directive causes a formfeed to be inserted in the listing output if pagination is enabled by either a **title** directive or the **-ft** option.

Example

```
xref      mult, div
page
ds.b      charin, charout
ds.w      a, b, sum
```

See Also

plen, title

plen

Description

Specify the number of lines per pages in the listing file

Syntax

```
plen <page_length>
```

Function

The **plen** directive causes *<page_length>* lines to be output per page in the listing output if pagination is enabled by either a **title** directive or the **-ft** option. If the number of lines already output on the current page is less than *<page_length>*, then the new page length becomes effective with *<page_length>*. If the number of lines already output on the current page is greater than or equal to *<page_length>*, a new page will be started and the new page length is set to *<page_length>*.

Example

```
plen      58
```

See Also

page

repeat

Description

Repeat a list of lines a number of times

Syntax

```
repeat <expression>
repeat_body
endr
```

Function

The **repeat** directive is used to cause the assembler to repeat the following list of source line up to the next **endr** directive. The number of times the source lines will be repeated is specified by the expression operand. The **repeat** directive is equivalent to a macro definition followed by the same number of calls on that macro.

Example

```
; shift a value n times
asln:  macro
        repeat \1
        aslb
        endr
        endm

; use of above macro
asln 5
```

See Also

endr, repeatl, rexit

repeatl

Description

Repeat a list of lines a number of times

Syntax

```
repeatl <arguments>
repeat_body
endr
```

Function

The **repeatl** directive is used to cause the assembler to repeat the following list of source line up to the next **endr** directive. The number of times the source lines will be repeated is specified by the number of arguments, separated with commas (with a maximum of 36 arguments) and executed each time with the value of an argument. The **repeatl** directive is equivalent to a macro definition followed by the same number of calls on that macro with each time a different argument. The repeat argument is denoted **\1** unless the argument list is starting by a name prefixed by a **** character. In such a case, the repeat argument is specified by its name prefixed by a **** character.

A **repeatl** directive may be terminated early by using the **rexit** directive which, when encountered, acts as if the end of the **repeatl** has been reached.

Example

```
    ; test a value using the numbered syntax
    repeatl      1,2,3
                add    #\1      ; add to accu
    endr
    end
```

or

```
    ; test a value using the named syntax
    repeatl      \count,1,2,3
                add    #\count ; add to accu
    endr
    end
```

will both produce:

```
2                ; test a value
9 0000 c30001    add    #1        ; add to accu
9 0003 c30002    add    #2        ; add to accu
9 0006 c30003    add    #3        ; add to accu
10                end
```

See Also

endr, repeat, rexit

restore

Description

Restore saved section

Syntax

```
restore
```

Function

The **restore** directive is used to restore the last saved section. This is equivalent to a switch to the saved section.

Example

```
switch .bss
var:    ds.b 1
var2:   ds.b 1
        save
        switch .text

function1:
10$:    ldab    var
        beq     10$
        stab    var2

function2:
10$:    ldaa    var2
        suba    var
        bne     10$
        rts
        restore
var3:   ds.b 1
var4:   ds.b 1

        switch .text

        ldaa    var3
        staa    var4
        end
```

See Also

save, section

rexit

Description

Terminate a repeat definition

Syntax

```
rexit
```

Function

The **rexit** directive is used to exit from a **repeat** definition before the **endr** directive is reached. *rexit* is usually placed after a conditional assembly directive.

Example

```
; shift a value n times
asln:  macro
        repeat \1
        if \1 == 0
            rexit
        endif
        aslb
        endr
        endm

; use of above macro
asln 5
```

See Also

endr, repeat, repeatl

save

Description

Save section

Syntax

```
save
```

Function

The **save** directive is used to save the current section so it may be restored later in the source file.

Example

```
switch .bss
var:   ds.b   1
var2:  ds.b   1
      save
      switch .text

function1:
10$:   ldab   var
      beq    10$
      stab   var2

function2:
10$:   ldaa   var2
      suba   var
      bne    10$
      rts
      restore
var3:  ds.b   1
var4:  ds.b   1

      switch .text

      ldaa   var3
      staa   var4
      end
```

See Also

restore, section

section

Description

Define a new section

Syntax

```
<section_name>: section [<attributes>]
```

Function

The **section** directive defines a new section, and indicates that the following program is to be assembled into a section named *<section_name>*. The *section* directive cannot be used to redefine an already existing section. If no name and no attributes are specified to the section, the default is to define the section as a *text* section with its same attributes. It is possible to associate *<attributes>* to the new section. An attribute is either the name of an existing section or an attribute keyword. Attributes may be added if prefixed by a '+' character or not prefixed, or deleted if prefixed by a '-' character. Several attributes may be specified separated by commas. Attribute keywords are:

abs	absolute section
bss	bss style section (no data)
hilo	values are stored in descending order of significance
even	enforce even starting address and size
zpage	enforce 8 bit relocation
long	enforce 32 bit relocation

Example

```
CODE:    section .text    ; section of text
lab1:    ds.b      5
DATA:    section .data    ; section of data
lab2:    ds.b      6
          switch CODE
lab3:    ds.b      7
          switch DATA
lab4:    ds.b      8
```

This will place **lab1** and then **lab3** into consecutive locations in section CODE and **lab2** and **lab4** in consecutive locations in section DATA.

```
.frame: section .bsct,even
```

The *.frame* section is declared with same attributes than the *.bsct* section and with the *even* attribute.

```
.bit:    section +zpage,+even,-hilo
```

The *.bit* section is declared using 8 bit relocation, with an even alignment and storing data with an ascending order of significance.

When the **-m** option is used, the *section* directive also accepts a number as operand. In that case, a labelled directive is considered as a section definition, and an unlabelled directive is considered as a section opening (*switch*).

```
.rom:    section 1          ; define section 1
        nop
.ram:    section 2          ; define section 2
        dc.b    1
        section 1          ; switch back to section 1
        nop
```

It is still possible to add attributes after the section number of a section definition line, separated by a comma.

See Also

switch, bsct

set

Description

Give a resetable value to a symbol

Syntax

```
label: set <expression>
```

Function

The **set** directive allows a value to be associated with a symbol. Symbols declared with **set** may be altered by a subsequent **set**. The **equ** directive should be used for symbols that will have a constant value. *<expression>* must be fully defined at the time the **equ** directive is assembled.

Example

```
OFST:  set      10
```

See Also

equ

spc

Description

Insert a number of blank lines before the next statement in the listing file.

Syntax

```
spc <num_lines>
```

Function

The **spc** directive causes <num_lines> blank lines to be inserted in the listing output before the next statement.

Example

```
spc      5
title    "new file"
```

If listing is requested, 5 blank lines will be inserted, then the title will be output.

See Also

title

switch

Description

Place code into a section.

Syntax

```
switch <section_name>
```

Function

The **switch** directive switches output to the section defined with the **section** directive. *<section_name>* is the name of the target section, and has to be already defined. All code and data following the *switch* directive up to the next *section*, *switch*, *bsct* or *end* directive are placed in the section *<section_name>*.

Example

```
switch .bss
buffer: ds.b    512
xdef    buffer
```

This will place **buffer** into the *.bss* section.

See Also

section, *bsct*

tabs

Description

Specify the number of spaces for a tab character in the listing file

Syntax

```
tabs <tab_size>
```

Function

The **tabs** directive sets the number of spaces to be substituted to the tab character in the listing output. The minimum value of *<tab_size>* is 0 and the maximum value is 128.

Example

```
tabs      6
```

title

Description

Define default header

Syntax

```
title "name"
```

Function

The **title** directive is used to enable the listing pagination and to set the default page header used when a new page is written to the listing output.

Example

```
title    "My Application"
```

See Also

page, plen

Note

For compatibility with previous assemblers, the directive **ttl** is alias to **title**.

xdef

Description

Declare a variable to be visible

Syntax

```
xdef identifier[,identifier...]
```

Function

Visibility of symbols between modules is controlled by the **xdef** and **xref** directives. A symbol may only be declared as *xdef* in one module. A symbol may be declared both *xdef* and *xref* in the same module, to allow for usage of common headers.

Example

```
xdef    sqrt    ; allow sqrt to be called
                ; from another module
sqrt:    ; routine to return a square root
                ; of a number >= zero
```

See Also

xref

xref

Description

Declare symbol as being defined elsewhere

Syntax

```
xref[.b] identifier[,identifier...]
```

Function

Visibility of symbols between modules is controlled by the **xref** and **xdef** directives. Symbols which are defined in other modules must be declared as *xref*. A symbol may be declared both *xdef* and *xref* in the same module, to allow for usage of common headers.

The directive *xref.b* declares external symbols located in the *.bsct* section.

Example

```
xref    otherprog
xref.b  zpage    ; is in .bsct section
```

See Also

xdef

Using The Linker

This chapter discusses the **clnk** linker and details how it operates. It describes each linker option, and explains how to use the linker's many special features. It also provides example linker command lines that show you how to perform some useful operations. This chapter includes the following sections:

- Introduction
- Overview
- Linker Command File Processing
- Linker Options
- Section Relocation
- Setting Bias and Offset
- Linking Objects
- Linking Library Objects
- Automatic Data Initialization
- Checksum Computation

- Shared Data Handling
- DEFs and REFs
- Special Topics
- Description of The Map File
- Linker Command Line Examples

Introduction

The linker combines relocatable object files, selectively loading from libraries of such files made with *clib*, to create an executable image for standalone execution or for input to other binary reformatters.

clnk will also allow the object image that it creates to have local symbol regions, so the same library can be loaded multiple times for different segments, and so that more control is provided over which symbols are exposed. On microcontroller architectures this feature is useful if your executable image must be loaded into several noncontiguous areas in memory.

NOTE

The terms “segment” and “section” refer to different entities and are carefully kept distinct throughout this chapter. A “section” is a contiguous subcomponent of an object module that the linker treats as indivisible.

The assembler creates several sections in each object module. The linker combines input sections in various ways, but will not break one up. The linker then maps these combined input sections into output segments in the executable image using the options you specify.

A “*segment*” is a logically unified block of memory in the executable image. An example is the code segment, which contains the executable instructions.

For most applications, the “*sections*” in an object module that the linker accepts as input are equivalent to the “segments” of the executable image that the linker generates as output.

Overview

You use the linker to build your executable program from a variety of modules. These modules can be the output of the C cross compiler, or can be generated from handwritten assembly language code. Some modules can be linked unconditionally, while others can be selected only as needed from function libraries. All input to the linker, regardless of its source, must be reduced to object modules, which are then combined to produce the program file.

The output of the linker can be in the same format as its input. Thus, a program can be built in several stages, possibly with special handling at some of the stages. It can be used to build freestanding programs such as system bootstraps and embedded applications. It can also be used to make object modules that are loaded one place in memory but are designed to execute somewhere else. For example, a data segment in ROM to be copied into RAM at program startup can be linked to run at its actual target memory location. Pointers will be initialized and address references will be in place.

As a side effect of producing files that can be reprocessed, *clnk* retains information in the final program file that can be quite useful. The symbol table, or list of external identifiers, is handy when debugging programs, and the utility *cobj* can be made to produce a readable list of symbols from an object file. Finally, each object module has in its header useful information such as segment sizes.

In most cases, the final program file created by *clnk* is structurally identical to the object module input to *clnk*. The only difference is that the executable file is complete and contains everything that it needs to run. There are a variety of utilities which will take the executable file and convert it to a form required for execution in specific microcontroller environments. The linker itself can perform some conversions, if all that is required is for certain portions of the executable file to be stripped off and for segments to be relocated in a particular way. You can therefore create executable programs using the linker that can be passed directly to a PROM programmer.

The linker works as follows:

- Options applying to the linker configuration. These options are referred to in this chapter as “[*Global Command Line Options*](#)” on page 269.
- Command file options apply only to specific sections of the object being built. These options are referred to in this chapter as “[*Segment Control Options*](#)” on page 270.
- Sections can be relocated to execute at arbitrary places in physical memory, or “stacked” on suitable storage boundaries one after the other.
- The final output of the linker is a header, followed by all the segments and the symbol table. There may also be an additional debug symbol table, which contains information used for debugging purposes.

Linker Command File Processing

The command file of the linker is a small control language designed to give the user a great deal of power in directing the actions of the linker. The basic structure of the command file is a series of command items. A command item is either an explicit linker option or the name of an input file (which serves as an implicit directive to link in that file or, if it is a library, scan it and link in any required modules of the library).

An explicit linker option consists of an option keyword followed by any parameters that the option may require. The options fall into five groups:

Group 1
(+seg <section>) controls the creation of new segments and has parameters which are selected from the set of local flags.
(+grp <section>) controls the section grouping.
Group 2
(+inc *) is used to include files
Group 3
(+new , +pub and +pri) controls name regions and takes no parameters.
Group 4
(+def <symbol>) is used to define symbols and aliases and takes one required parameter, a string of the form ident1=ident2 , a string of the form ident1=constant , or a string of the form ident1=@segment .
Group 5
(+spc <segment>) is used to reserve space in a particular <segment> and has a required parameter

A description of each of these command line options appears below.

The manner in which the linker relocates the various sections is controlled by the **+seg** option and its parameters. If the size of a current segment is zero when a command to start a new segment of the same name is encountered, it is discarded. Several different sections can be redirected directly to the same segment by using the **+grp** option.

clnk links the *<files>* you specify in order. If a file is a library, it is scanned as long as there are modules to load. Only those library modules that define public symbols for which there are currently outstanding unsatisfied references are included.

Inserting comments in Linker commands

Each input line may be ended by a comment, which must be prefixed by a **#** character. If you have to use the **#** as a significant character, you can escape it, using the syntax **\#**.

Here is an example for an indirect link file:

```
# Link for EPROM
+seg .data -b0x2000           # start data address
+seg .text -b0xe000 -n .text  # start eeprom address
+seg .const -a .text         # constants follow program
\cx32\lib\crt0.o             # startup object file
mod1.o mod2.o               # input object files
\cx32\lib\libc.a             # C library
\cx32\lib\libm.a             # machine library
+seg .const -b0xffd6         # vectors eeprom address
vector.o                    # reset and interrupt vectors
```

Linker Options

The linker accepts the following options, each of which is described in detail below.

```
clnk [options] <file.lkf> [<files>]
    -bs#   bank size
    -e*    error file name
    -l*>   library path
    -m*    map file name
    -o*    output file name
    -p     phys addr in map
    -s     symbol table only
    -v     verbose
```

The **output file name** and the **link command file** **must** be present on the command line. The options are described in terms of the two groups listed above; the global options that apply to the linker, and the segment control options that apply only to specific segments.

Global Command Line Options

The global command line options that the linker accepts are:

- bs#** set the window shift to #, which implies that the number of bytes in a window is **2**#**. The default value is 0 (bank switching disabled). For more information, see the section “[Address Arithmetic](#)” on page 278.
- e*** log errors in the text file * instead of displaying the messages on the terminal screen.
- l*>** specify library path. You can specify up to 20 different paths. Each path is a directory name, **not** terminated by any directory separator character.
- m*** produce map information for the program being built to file *.
- o*** write output to the file *. This option is required and has no default value.
- p** display symbols with physical address instead of logical address in the map file.
- s** create an output file containing only an absolute symbol table, but still with an object file format. The resulting file can then be used in another link to provide the symbol table of an existing application.
- v** be “verbose”.

Segment Control Options

This section describes the segment control options that control the structure of individual segments of the output module.

A group of options to control a specific segment must begin with a **+seg** option. Such an option must precede any group of options so that the linker can determine which segment the options that follow apply to. The linker allows up to **255** different segments.

+seg <segment> <options> start a new segment with the name *<segment>* and build it as directed by the *<options>* that follow:

- a*** make the current segment follow the segment *. Options **-b**, **-e** and **-o** cannot be specified if **-a** has been specified.
- b*** set the physical start address of the segment to *. Option **-e** or **-a** cannot be specified if **-b** has been specified.
- c** do not output any code/data for the segment.
- ck** mark the segment you want to check. For more information, see “[Checksum Computation](#)” on page 284.
- ds#** set the bank size for paged addresses calculation. This option overwrites the global **-bs** option for that segment.
- e*** set the physical end address of the segment to *. Option **-b** or **-a** cannot be specified if **-e** has been specified.
- f#** fill the segment up to the value specified by the **-m** option with bytes whose value is #. This option has no effect if no **-m** option is specified for that segment.
- i?** define the initialization option. Valid options are:

-it	use this segment to host the descriptor and images copies of initialized data used for automatic data initialization
-id	initialize this segment

-ib	do not initialize this segment
-is	mark this segment as shared data
-ik	mark this segment as checksum segment

-m* set the maximum size of the segment to * bytes. If not specify, there is no checking on any segment size. If a segment is declared with the **-a** option as following a segment which is marked with the **-m** option, then set the maximum available space for all the possible consecutive segments.

-n* set the output name of the segment to *. Segment output names have at most 15 characters; longer names are truncated. For example, use this option when you want to generate the hex records for a particular PROM, such as:

```
+seg .text -b0x2000 -n prom1
<object_files>
+seg .text -b0x4000 -n prom2
<object_files>
...
```

You can generate the hex records for **prom1** by typing:

```
chex -n prom1 file.h11
```

For more information, see “[The chex Utility](#)” in **Chapter 8**.

-o* set the logical start address of the segment to * if **-b** option is specified or the logical end address if **-e** option is specified. The default is to set the logical address equal to the physical address. Options **-b** and **-e** cannot be specified both if **-o** has been specified.

-r* round up the starting address of the segment. The expression defines the power of two of the alignment value. The option **-r3** will align the start address to an 8 bytes bound-

ary. This option has no effect if the start address is explicitly defined by a **-b** option.

- s*** define a space name for the segment. This segment will be verified for overlapping only against segments defined with the same space name.
- v** do not verify overlapping for the segment.
- w*** set the window size for banked applications, and activate the automatic bank segment creation.
- x** expandable segment. Allow a segment to spill in the next segment of the same type if its size exceeds the value given by the **-m** option. The next segment must be declared **before** the object causing the overflow. This option has no effect if no **-m** option is specified for the expandable segment. Options **-e** and **-w** cannot be specified.

Options defining a numerical value (addresses and sizes) can be entered as constant, symbols, or simple expression combined them with ‘+’ and ‘-’ operators. Any symbol used has to be defined before to be used, either by a **+def** directive or loaded as an absolute symbol from a previously loaded object file. The operators are applied from left to right without any priority and parenthesis **()** are not allowed. Such expressions CANNOT contain any whitespace. For example:

```
+def START=0x1000
+def MAXSIZE=0x2000
+seg .text -bSTART+0x100 -mMAXSIZE-0x100
```

The first line defines the symbol `START` equals to the absolute value 1000 (hex value), the second line defines the symbol `MAXSIZE` equals to the absolute value 2000 (hex value). The last line opens a **.text** segment located at 1100 (hex value) with a maximum size of 1f00 (hex value). For more information, see the section “[Symbol Definition Option](#)” on page 276.

Unless **-b*** is given to set the *bss* segment start address, the *bss* segment will be made to follow the last *data* segment in the output file. Unless

-b* is given to set the *data* segment start address, the *data* segment will be made to follow the last *bsct* segment in the output file. The *bsct* and *text* segments are set to start at zero unless you specify otherwise by using **-b** option. It is permissible for all segments to overlap, as far as *clnk* is concerned; the target machine may or may not make sense of this situation (as with separate instruction and data spaces).

NOTE

A new segment of the specified type will not actually be created if the last segment of the same name has a size of zero. However, the new options will be processed and will override the previous values.

Segment Grouping

Different sections can be redirected directly to the same segment with the **+grp** directive:

+grp <section>=<section list>

where *<section>* is the name of the target section, and *<section list>* a list of section names separated by commas. When loading an object file, each section listed in the right part of the declaration will be loaded as if it was named as defined in the left part of the declaration. The target section may be a new section name or the name of an existing section (including the predefined ones). When using a new name, this directive has to be preceded by a matching **+seg** definition.

NOTE

*Whitespaces are **not** allowed aside the equal sign '=' and the commas.*

Linking Files on the Command line

The linker supports linking objects from the command line. The link command file has to be modified to indicate where the objects are to be loaded using the following **@#** syntax.

@1, @2,... include each individual object file at its positional location on the command line and insert them at the respective locations in the link file (**@1** is the first object file, and so on).

@* include all of the objects on the command line and insert them at this location in the link file.

Example

Linking objects from the command line:

```
clnk -o test.h11 test.lkf file1.o file2.o
```

```
## Test.lkf:  
+seg .text -b0x5000  
+seg .data -b0x100  
@1  
+seg .text -b0x7000  
@2
```

Is equivalent to

```
clnk -otest.h11 test.lkf  
## test.lkf  
+seg .text -b0x5000  
+seg .data -b0x100  
file1.o  
+seg .text -b0x7000  
file2.o
```

Include Option

Subparts of the link command file can be included from other files by using the following option:

+inc* include the file specified by *. This is equivalent to expanding the text file into the link file directly at the location of the **+inc** line.

Example

Include the file “seg2.txt” in the link file “test.lkf”:


```
## Test.lkf:
+seg .text -b0x5000
+seg .data -b0x100
file1.o file2.o
+seg .text -b0x7000
+inc seg2.txt

## seg2.txt:
mod1.o mod2.o mod3.o

## Resultant link file
+seg .text -b0x5000
+seg .data -b0x100
file1.o file2.o
+seg .text -b0x7000
mod1.o mod2.o mod3.o
```

Private Region Options

Options that control code regions are:

- +new** start a new region. A “region” is a user definable group of input object modules which may have both public and private portions. The private portions of a region are local to that region and may not access or be accessed by anything outside the region. By default, a new region is given public access.
- +pub** make the following portion of a given region public.
- +pri** make the following portion of a given region private.

Symbol Definition Option

The option controlling symbol definition and aliases is:

+def* define new symbols to the linker. The string *** must be of the form:

- **ident=constant** where *ident* is a valid identifier and *constant* is a valid constant expressed with the standard C language syntax. This form is used to add *ident* to the symbol table as a defined absolute symbol with a value equal to *constant*.
- **ident1=ident2** where *ident1* and *ident2* are both valid identifiers. This form is used to define aliases. The symbol *ident1* is defined as the alias for the symbol *ident2* and goes in the symbol table as an external DEF (a DEF is an entity defined by a given module.) If *ident2* is not already in the symbol table, it is placed there as a REF (a REF is an entity referred to by a given module).
- **ident=@section** where *ident* is a valid identifier, and *section* is the name of a section specified as the first argument of a **+seg** directive. This form is used to add *ident* to the symbol table as a defined symbol whose value is the address of the next byte to be loaded in the specified section.
- **ident=start(segment)** where *segment* is the name given to a segment by the **-n** option. This form is used to add *ident* to the symbol table as a defined symbol whose value is the *logical* start address of the designated segment. This directive can be placed anywhere in the link command file, even before the segment is defined.
- **ident=end(segment)** where *segment* is the name given to a segment by the **-n** option. This form is used to add *ident* to the symbol table as a defined symbol whose value is the *logical* end address of the designated segment. This directive can be placed anywhere in the link command file, even before the segment is defined.

- **ident=pstart(segment)** where *segment* is the name given to a segment by the **-n** option. This form is used to add *ident* to the symbol table as a defined symbol whose value is the *physical* start address of the designated segment. This directive can be placed anywhere in the link command file, even before the segment is defined.
- **ident=pend(segment)** where *segment* is the name given to a segment by the **-n** option. This form is used to add *ident* to the symbol table as a defined symbol whose value is the *physical* end address of the designated segment. This directive can be placed anywhere in the link command file, even before the segment is defined.
- **ident=size(segment)** where *segment* is the name given to a segment by the **-n** option. This form is used to add *ident* to the symbol table as a defined symbol whose value is the size of the designated segment. This directive can be placed anywhere in the link command file, even before the segment is defined.

NOTE

Whitespaces are **not** allowed aside the equal sign '='.

For more information about DEFs and REFs, refer to the section “[DEFs and REFs](#)” on page 287.

Reserve Space Option

The following option is used to reserve space in a given segment:

+spc <segment>=<value> reserve <value> bytes of space at the current location in the segment named <segment>.

+spc <segment>=@section reserve a space at the current location in the segment named <segment> equal to the current size of the opened segment where the given *section* is loaded. The size is evaluated at once, so if the reference segment grows after that directive, there is no further modification of the space reservation. If such a directive is used to

duplicate an existing section, it has to be placed in the link command file after all the object files.

NOTE

Whitespaces are **not** allowed aside the equal sign '='.

Section Relocation

The linker relocates the sections of the input files into the segments of the output file.

An absolute section, by definition, cannot and should not be relocated. The linker will detect any conflicts between the placement of this file and its absolute address given at compile/assemble time.

In the case of a bank switched system, it is still possible for an absolute section to specify a physical address different from the one and at compile/assembly time, the logical address **MUST** match the one specified at compile/assemble time.

Address Arithmetic

The two most important parameters describing a segment are its **bias** and its **offset**, respectively its physical and logical start addresses. In nonsegmented architectures there is no distinction between *bias* and *offset*. The *bias* is the address of the location in memory where the segment is relocated to run. The *offset* of a segment will be equal to the *bias*. In this case you must set only the *bias*. The linker sets the *offset* automatically.

In the paged architecture of the MC68HC11K4, the *bias* is the physical address of the start of the segment in question, as seen from memory. The *offset* is the logical address of the start of the segment, as seen from the processor.

The window shift specified by the **-bs#** option gives a measure of the resolution used to hold the *bias* value of a segment. If the value specified by the **-bs#** option is **n**, then the resolution is **2**n**. For example, the value of **n** is **13** for the **MC68HC11K4**.

In segmented architectures, the fundamental relationship between the bias and the offset is:

$$\text{bias} = (\text{SR} \ll \text{BS}) + \text{offset}$$

where **SR** is the actual value used in a segment or page register and **BS** is the window shift value you specify with the **-bs#** option. The linker will be able to compute the value of the page register, given the bias and the offset of any segment.

In nonsegmented architectures both **BS** and **SR** are usually equal to zero, so the formula becomes:

$$\text{bias} = \text{offset}$$

Overlapping Control

The linker is verifying that a segment does not overlap any other one, by checking the physical addresses (*bias*). This control can be locally disabled for one segment by using the **-v** option. For targets implementing separated address spaces (such as bank switching), the linker allows several segments to be isolated from the other ones, by giving them a *space* name with the **-s** option. In such a case, a segment in a named space is checked only against the other segments of the same space. The unnamed segments are checked together.

Setting Bias and Offset

The bias and offset of a segment are controlled by the **-b*** option and **-o*** option. The rules for dealing with these options are described below.

Setting the Bias

If the **-b*** option is specified, the bias is set to the value specified by *. Otherwise, the bias is set to the end of the last segment of the same name. If the **-e*** option is specified, the bias is set to value obtain by subtracting the segment size to the value specified by *.

Setting the Offset

If the **-o*** option is specified, the offset is set to the value specified by *. Otherwise, the offset is set equal to the bias.

Using Default Placement

If none of **-b**, **-e** or **-o** options is specified, the segment may be placed *after* another one, by using the **-a*** option, where * is the name of another segment. Otherwise, the linker will try to use a default placement based on the segment name. The compiler produces specific sections for code (*.text*) and data (*.data*, *.bss*, and *.bsect*). By default, *.text* and *.bsect* segments start at zero, *.data* segment follows the latest *.text* segment, and *.bss* segment follows the latest *.data* segment. Note that there is no default placement for the constants segment *.const*.

Linking Objects

A new segment is built by concatenating the corresponding sections of the input object modules in the order the linker encounters them. As each input section is added to the output segment, it is adjusted to be relocated relative to the end portion of the output segment so far constructed. The first input object module encountered is relocated relative to a value that can be specified to the linker. The size of the output *bss* segment is the sum of the sizes of the input *bss* sections.

Unless the **-v** option has been specified on a segment definition, the linker checks that the segment physical address range does not overlap any other segment of the application. Logical addresses are not checked as bank switching creates several segments starting at the same logical address.

Linking Library Objects

The linker will selectively include modules from a library when outstanding references to member functions are encountered. The library file must be placed *after* all objects that may call its modules to avoid unresolved references. The standard ANSI libraries are provided in three versions to provide the level of support that your application needs. This can save a significant amount of code space and execution time when full ANSI double precision floating point support is not needed. The first letter after “*lib*” in each library file denotes the library type (**d** for double, **f** for single precision, and **i** for integer). and the second letter after “*lib*” specifies the ALU libraries version. See below.

libdM.h11 Double Precision Library provides ANSI double precision floating point support. Link this library *before* the other libraries when needed.

libfM.h11 Single Precision Library is used in conjunction with the **+sprec** option to force all floats (even variables declared as doubles) to single precision. This library is used for applications where only single precision floating point support is needed. This library is significantly smaller and faster than the double precision. Link this library *before* the other libraries when *only* single precision floats are used.

NOTE

*The **+sprec** compiler option **MUST** be used if you want to use the Single Precision library in order to suppress normal ANSI float to double promotions.*

libiM.h11 Integer only Library. This library is designed for applications where **no** floating point is used. Floats can still be used for arithmetic but not with the standard library. Link this library *before* the other libraries when only integer libraries are needed.

NOTE

Compiler libraries must be located in a non-banked area of memory or duplicated in each bank that uses them.

	Machine Library	Integer Only Library	Single Precision Floats	Double Precision Floats
Standard	Libm.h11	libi.h11	libf.h11	libd.h11
(M & N series)		libia.h11	libfa.h11	libda.h11

Library Order

You should link your application with the libraries in the following orders:

Integer Only Application	Single Precision Float Application	Double Precision Float Application
libi.h11	libf.h11	libd.h11
libm.h11	libi.h11	libi.h11
	libm.h11	libm.h11

For more information, see “[Linker Command Line Examples](#)” on page 294.

Automatic Data Initialization

The linker is able to configure the executable for an automatic data initialization. This mechanism is initiated automatically when the linker finds the symbol `__idesc__` in the symbol table, as an *undefined* symbol. *clnk* first locates a segment behind which it will add an image of the data, so called the *host* segment. The default behaviour is to select the first *.text* segment in the executable file, but you can override this by marking one segment with the **-it** option.

Then, *clnk* looks in the executable file for initialized segments. All the segments *.data* and *.bss* are selected by default, unless disabled explicitly by the **-ib** option. Otherwise, renamed segments may also be selected by using the **-id** option. The **-id** option cannot be specified on a bss segment, default or renamed. Once all the selected segments are located, *clnk* builds a descriptor containing the starting address and length of each such segment, and moves the descriptor and the selected segments to the end of the *host* segment, without relocating the content of the selected segments.

For more information, see “[Generating Automatic Data Initialization](#)” in **Chapter 2** and “[Initializing data in RAM](#)” in **Chapter 3**.

Descriptor Format

The created descriptor has the following format:

```
dc.w start_prom_address    ;starting address of the
                           ; first image in prom
; for each segment:
dc.b flag                  ; segment type
dc.w start_ram_address     ; start address of segment in ram
dc.w end_prom_address      ; address of last data byte
                           ; plus one in prom
; after the last segment:
dc.b 0
```

The flag byte is used to detect the end of the descriptor, and also to specify a type for the data segment. The actual value is equal to the code of the first letter in the segment name.

The end address in PROM of one segment gives also the starting address in prom of the following segment, if any.

The address of the descriptor will be assigned to the symbol `__idesc__`, which is used by the `crti.s` startup routine. So all this mechanism will be activated just by linking the `crti.hll` file with the application, or by referencing the symbol `__idesc__` in your own startup file.

If the *host* segment has been opened with a **-m** option giving a maximum size, *clnk* will check that there is enough space to move all the selected segments.

Checksum Computation

This feature is activated by the detection of the symbol `__ckdesc__` as an undefined symbol. This is practically done by calling one of the provided checksum functions which uses that symbol and returns **0** if the checksum is correct. These functions are provided in the integer library and are the following:

<code>__checksum()</code>	check a 8 bit checksum stored once for all the selected segments.
<code>__checksumx()</code>	check a 8 bit checksum stored for every selected segments. This method allows a segment to be dynamically reloaded by updating the corresponding CRC byte.
<code>__checksum16()</code>	check a 16 bit checksum stored once for all the selected segments.
<code>__checksum16x()</code>	check a 16 bit checksum stored for every selected segments. This method allows a segment to be dynamically reloaded by updating the corresponding CRC word.

You then have to update the link command file in two ways:

- 1) Mark the segments (usually code segments) you want to check, by using the **-ck** option on the **+seg** line. Note that you need only to mark the first segment of a hooked list, meaning that if a segment is declared with **-a** option as following a segment which is marked with the **-ck** option, it will automatically inherit the **-ck** marker and will be also checked. Note also that if you are using the automatic

initialization mechanism, and if the code segment hosting the init descriptor (**-it**) is also marked with **-ck**, the init segment and ALL the initialization copy segments will also be checked.

- 2) Create an empty segment which will contain the checksum descriptor. This has to be an empty segment, located wherever you want with a **-b** or **-a** option. This segment will NOT be checked, even if marked or hooked to a marked segment. The linker will fill this segment with a data descriptor allowing the checking function to scan all the requested segments and compute the final **crc**. This segment has to be specially marked with the option **-ik** to allow the linker to recognize it as the checksum segment.

Here is an example of link command file showing how to use **-ck** and **-ik**:

```
#          LINKER EXAMPLE FOR CHECKSUM IMPLEMENTATION
#
# mark the first segment of an attached list with -ck
#
+seg .text -b 0x8000 -n code -ck# this segment is marked
+seg .const -a code -n const# this one is implicitly marked
#
# create an empty segment for checksum table marked with -ik
#
#
+seg .cksum -a const -n cksum -ik# checksum segment
#
# remaining part should contain the verification code
#
#
+seg .data -b 0x100
crtsh.hll
test.o
libi.hll
libm.hll
+def __memory=@.bss
```

The descriptor built by the linker is a list of entries followed by the expected CRC value, only once if functions [_checksum\(\)](#) or [_checksum16\(\)](#) are called, or after each entry if functions [_checksumx\(\)](#) or [_checksum16x\(\)](#) are called. An entry contains a flag byte, a start address and an end address. The flag byte is non-zero, and is *or'ed* with

0x80 if the start address contains a bank value (two words, page first then start address), otherwise it is just one word with the start address. The end address is always one word. The last entry is always followed by a nul byte (seen as an ending flag), and immediately followed by the expected CRC if functions `_checksum()` or `_checksum16()` are called. The linker compresses the list of entries by creating only one entry for contiguous segments (as long as they are in the same space (**-s*** option) and in the same bank/page).

The current linker implements only one algorithm. Starting with zero, the CRC byte/word is first rotated one bit left (a true bit rotation), then xor'ed with the code byte. The CRC values stored in the checksum descriptor are the one's complement value of the expected CRC.

Shared Data Handling

When the compiler is run with a *static model* allowing *shared data*, each function not using the stack (*nostack* function) reserves a memory area but does not allocate it. Based on the information received from the debug symbol table, the linker is able to allocate all these areas by overlapping those areas corresponding to independent functions, *i.e.* these functions that never call each other directly or through other functions. This feature saves memory while keeping the ability to use arguments and local variables in *nostack* functions.

NOTE

Recursive functions cannot be selected as nostack functions.

The linker will allocate the global amount of memory in a segment provided by the user. This segment is marked with the **-is** option, and has to be empty. It is located like all other segments using either **-b** or **-a** options, as shown in the following example:

```
+seg .text -b0x1000
+seg .data -b0x100
+seg .shared -b0x80 -m0x80 -is
file1 file2
```

Object files *file1* and *file2* should not produce any data in a *.shared* section, otherwise the linker will complain and abort the linking process.

DEFs and REFs

The linker builds a new symbol table based on the symbol tables in the input object modules, but it is not a simple concatenation with adjustments. There are two basic type of symbols that the linker puts into its internal symbol table: **REFs** and **DEFs**. DEFs are symbols that are defined in the object module in which they occur. REFs are symbols that are referenced by the object module in which they occur, but are not defined there.

The linker also builds a debug symbol table based on the debug symbol tables in any of the input object modules. It builds the debug symbol table by concatenating the debug symbol tables of each input object module in the order it encounters them. If debugging is not enabled for any of input object module, the debug symbol table will be of zero length.

An incoming REF is added to the symbol table as a REF if that symbol is not already entered in the symbol table; otherwise, it is ignored (that reference has already been satisfied by a DEF or the reference has already been noted). An incoming DEF is added to the symbol table as a DEF if that symbol is not already entered in the symbol table; its value is adjusted to reflect how the linker is relocating the input object module in which it occurred. If it is present as a REF, the entry is changed to a DEF and the symbol's adjusted value is entered in the symbol table entry. If it is present as a DEF, an error occurs (multiply defined symbol).

When the linker is processing a library, an object module in the library becomes an input object module to the linker only if it has at least one DEF which satisfies some outstanding REF in the linker's internal symbol table. Thus, the simplest use of *clnk* is to combine two files and check that no unused references remain.

The executable file created by the linker must have no REFs in its symbol table. Otherwise, the linker emits the error message “*undefined symbol*” and returns failure.

Special Topics

This section explains some special linker capabilities that may have limited applicability for building most kinds of microcontroller applications.

Private Name Regions

Private name regions are used when you wish to link together a group of files and expose only some to the symbol names that they define. This lets you link a larger program in groups without worrying about names intended only for local usage in one group colliding with identical names intended to be local to another group. Private name regions let you keep names truly local, so the problem of name space pollution is much more manageable.

An explicit use for private name regions in an MC68HC11 environment is in building a paged program with duplication of the most used library functions in each page, in order to avoid extra page commutation. To avoid complaints when multiple copies of the same file redefine symbols, each such contribution is placed in a private name region accessible only to other files in the same page.

The basic sequence of commands for each island looks like:

```
+new <public files> +pri <private libraries>
```

Any symbols defined in *<public files>* are known outside this private name region. Any symbols defined in *<private libraries>* are known only within this region; hence they may safely be redefined as private to other regions as well.

NOTE

All symbols defined in a private region are local symbols and will not appear in the symbol table of the output file.

Renaming Symbols

At times it may be desirable to provide a symbol with an alias and to hide the original name (*i.e.*, to prevent its definition from being used by the linker as a DEF which satisfies REFs to that symbol name). As an

example, suppose that the function *func* in the C library provided with the compiler does not do everything that is desired of it for some special application. There are three methods of handling this situation (we will ignore the alternative of trying to live with the existing function's deficiencies).

The first method is to write a new version of the function that performs as required and link it into the program being built before linking in the libraries. This will cause the new definition of *func* to satisfy any references to that function, so the linker does not include the version from the library because it is not needed. This method has two major drawbacks: first, a new function must be written and debugged to provide something which basically already exists; second, the details of exactly what the function must do and how it must do it may not be available, thus preventing a proper implementation of the function.

The second approach is to write a new function, say *my_func*, which does the extra processing required and then calls the standard function *func*. This approach will generally work, unless the original function *func* is called by other functions in the libraries. In that case, the extra function behavior cannot occur when *func* is called from library functions, since it is actually *my_func* that performs it.

The third approach is to use the aliasing capabilities of the linker. Like the second method, a new function will be written which performs the new behavior and then calls the old function. The twist is to give the old function a new name and hide its old name. Then the new function is given the old function's name and, when it calls the old function, it uses the new name, or alias, for that function. The following linker script provides a specific example of this technique for the function *func*:

```
line 1 +seg .text -b 0x1000
line 2 +seg .data -b0
line 3 +new
line 4 Crts.xx
line 5 +def _oldfunc=_func
line 6 +pri func.o
line 7 +new
line 8 prog.o newfunc.o
line 9 <libraries>
```

NOTE

*The function name `func` as referenced here is the name as seen by the C programmer. The name which is used in the linker for purposes of aliasing is the name as seen at the object module level. For more information on this transformation, see the section “[Interfacing C to Assembly Language](#)” in **Chapter 3**.*

The main thing to note here is that `func.o` and `new_func.o` both define a (different) function named `func`. The second function `func` defined in `newfunc.o` calls the old `func` function by its alias `oldfunc`.

Name regions provide limited scope control for symbol names. The **+new** command starts a new name region, which will be in effect until the next **+new** command. Within a region there are public and private name spaces. These are entered by the **+pub** and **+pri** commands; by default, **+new** starts in the public name space.

Lines 1,2 are the basic linker commands for setting up a separate I/D program. Note that there may be other options required here, either by the system itself or by the user.

Line 3 starts a new region, initially in the public name space.

Line 4 specifies the startup code for the system being used.

Line 5 establishes the symbol `_oldfunc` as an alias for the symbol `_func`. The symbol `_oldfunc` is entered in the symbol table as a public definition. The symbol `_func` is entered as a private reference in the current region.

Line 6 switches to the private name space in the current region. Then `func.o` is linked and provides a definition (private, of course) which satisfies the reference to `_func`.

Line 7 starts a new name region, which is in the public name space by default. Now no reference to the symbol `_func` can reach the definition created on **Line 6**. That definition can only be reached now by using the symbol `_oldfunc`, which is publicly defined as an alias for it.

Line 8 links the user program and the module *newfunc.o*, which provides a new (and public) definition of *_func*. In this module the old version is accessed by its alias. This new version will satisfy all references to *_func* made in *prog.o* and the libraries.

Line 9 links in the required libraries.

The rules governing which name space a symbol belongs to are as follows:

- Any symbol definition in the public space is public and satisfies all outstanding and future references to that symbol.
- Any symbol definition in the private space of the current region is private and will satisfy any private reference in the current region.
- All private definitions of a symbol must occur before a public definition of that symbol. After a public definition of a symbol, any other definition of that symbol will cause a “*multiply defined symbol*” error.
- Any number of private definitions are allowed, but each must be in a separate region to prevent a multiply defined symbol error.
- Any new reference is associated with the region in which the reference is made. It can be satisfied by a private definition in that region, or by a public definition. A previous definition of that symbol will satisfy the reference if that definition is public, or if the definition is private and the reference is made in the same region as the definition.
- If a new reference to a symbol occurs, and that symbol still has an outstanding unsatisfied reference made in another region, then that symbol is marked as requiring a public definition to satisfy it.
- Any definition of a symbol must satisfy all outstanding references to that symbol; therefore, a private definition of a symbol which requires a public definition causes a blocked symbol reference error.

- No symbol reference can “reach” any definition made earlier than the most recent definition.

Absolute Symbol Tables

Absolute Symbol tables are used to export symbols from one application to another, to share common functions for instance, or to use functions already built in a ROM, from an application downloaded into RAM. The linker option **-s** will modify the output file in order to contain only a symbol table, without any code, but still with an object file format, by using the same command file used to build the application itself. All symbols are flagged as *absolute* symbols. This file can be used in another link, and will then transmit its symbol table, allowing another application to use those symbols as *externals*. Note that the linker does not produce any map even if requested, when used with the **-s** option.

The basic sequence of commands looks like:

```
clnk -o appli.hll -m appli.map appli.lkf
clnk -o appli.sym -s appli.lkf
```

The first link builds the application itself using the *appli.lkf* command file. The second link uses the same command file and creates an object file containing only an absolute symbol table. This file can then be used as an input object file in any other link command file.

Description of The Map File

The linker can output a map file by using the **-m** option. The map file contains 4 sections: the *Segment* section, the *Modules* section, the *Stack Usage* section and the *Symbols* section.

Segment Describe the different segments which compose the application, specifying for each of them: the start address (in hexa), the end address (in hexa), the length (in decimal), and the name of the segment. Note that the end value is the address of the byte following the last one of the segment, meaning that an empty segment will have the same start and end addresses. If a segment is initialized, it is displayed twice, the first time with its final address, the second time with the address of the image copy.

Modules List all the modules which compose the application, giving for each the description of all the defined sections with the same format as in the *Segment* section. If an object has been assembled with the **-pl** option, local symbols are displayed just after the module description.

Stack Usage Describe the amount of memory needed for the stack. When using a **stack model**, each function of the application is listed by its name, followed by a ‘>’ character indicating that this function is not called by any other one (the *main* function, *interrupt* functions, *task* entries...). The first number is the total size of the stack used by the function including all the internal calls. The second number between braces shows the stack need for that function alone. When using a **memory model** each function using space in the simulated stack is listed by its name followed by the address range of its local area, and followed by two numbers between braces. The first one indicates how many bytes are used for locals and the second one indicates how many bytes are used for arguments. Functions locally redirected to the physical stack are also displayed with their stack usage. The linker displays at the end of the list a total stack size assuming interrupt functions cannot be themselves interrupted. Interrupt frames and machine library calls are properly counted.

Symbols List all the symbols defined in the application specifying for each its name, its value, the section where it is defined, and the modules where it is used. If the target processor supports bank switching, addresses are displayed as logical addresses by default. Physical addresses can be displayed by specifying the **-p** option on the linker command line.

Return Value

clnk returns success if no error messages are printed to STDOUT; that is, if no undefined symbols remain and if all reads and writes succeed. Otherwise it returns failure.

Linker Command Line Examples

This section shows you how to use the linker to perform some basic operations.

A linker command file consists of linker options, input and output file, and libraries. The options and files are read from a command file by the linker. For example, to create an MC68HC11 file from *file.o* you can type at the system prompt:

```
clnk -o myapp.h11 myapp.lkf
```

where *myapp.lkf* contains:

```
+seg .text -b0x1000 -n .text # start eeprom address
+seg .const -a .text      # constants follow program
+seg .data -b0x100        # start data address
\cx32\lib\crt.s.h11      # startup object file
file1.o file2.o          # input object files
\cx32\lib\libi.h11       # C library
\cx32\lib\libm.h11       # machine library
+def __memory=@.bss      # symbol used by startup
```

The following link command file is an example for an application that does **not** use floating point data types and does **not** require automatic initialization.

```
# demo.lkf: link command WITHOUT automatic init
+seg .text -b 0xe000 -n.text # program start address
+seg .const -a .text        # constants follow program
+seg .data -b0x100          # start data address
+seg .share -b0x80 -m0x80 -is # shared segment
\cx32\lib\crt.s.h11         # startup with NO-INIT
acia.o                      # main program
module1.o                   # module program
\cx32\lib\libi.h11          # C lib.
\cx32\lib\libm.h11          # machine lib.
+seg .const -b0xffd6        # vectors eeprom address
vector.o                    # reset & interrupt vectors
# +def __memory=@.bss      # symbol used by library
+def __stack=0x00ff         # stack pointer initial value
```

The following link command file is an example for an application that uses single precision floating point data types and utilizes automatic data initialization.

```
# demo.lkf: link command WITH automatic init
+seg .text -b 0xe000 -n.text # program start address
+seg .const -a .text        # constants follow program
+seg .data -b0x100          # start data address
+seg .share -b0x80 -m0x80 -is # shared segment
\cx32\lib\crtssi.h11       # startup with auto-init
acia.o                     # main program
module1.o                  # module program
\cx32\lib\libf.h11         # single prec.
\cx32lib\libi.h11          # integer lib.
\cx32\lib\libm.h11         # machine lib.
+seg .const -b0xffd6       # vectors eprom address
vector.o                   # reset & interrupt vectors
+def __memory=@.bss        # end of bss segment
+def __stack=0x001fff      # stack pointer initial value
```


CHAPTER 7

Debugging Support

This chapter describes the debugging support available with the cross compiler targeting the [MC68HC11](#). There are two levels of debugging support available, so you can use either the COSMIC's [Zap](#) C source level cross debugger or your own debugger or in-circuit emulator to debug your application. This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Generating Debugging Information](#)
- [Generating Line Number Information](#)
- [Generating Data Object Information](#)
- [The cprd Utility](#)
- [The clst utility](#)

Generating Debugging Information

The compiler generates debugging information in response to command line options you pass to the compiler as described below. The compiler can generate the following debugging information:

- 1) line number information that allows COSMIC's C source level debugger or another debugger or emulator to locate the address of the code that a particular C source line (or set of lines) generates. You may put line number information into the object module in either of the two formats, or you can generate both line number information and information about program data and function arguments, as described below.
- 2) information about the name, type, storage class and address (absolute or relative to a stack offset) of program static data objects, function arguments, and automatic data objects that functions declare. Information about what source files produced which relocatable or executable files. This information may be localized by address (where the output file resides in memory). It may be written to a file, sorted by address or alphabetical order, or it may be output to a printer in paginated or unpaginated format.

Generating Line Number Information

The compiler puts line number information into a special debug symbol table. The debug symbol table is part of the relocatable object file produced by a compilation. It is also part of the output of the *clnk* linker. You can therefore obtain line number information about a single file, or about all the files making up an executable program. However, the compiler can produce line number information only for files that are **fewer** than 65,535 lines in length.

Generating Data Object Information

The **+debug** option directs the compiler to generate information about data objects and function arguments and return types. The debugging information the compiler generates is the information used by the COSMIC's C source level cross debugger or another debugger or emulator. The information produced about data objects includes their name, scope, type and address. The address can be either absolute or relative to a stack offset.

As with line number information alone, you can generate debugging information about a single file or about all the files making up an executable program.

cprd may be used to extract the debugging information from files compiled with the **+debug** option, as described below.

The *cprd* Utility

cprd extracts information about functions and data objects from an object module or executable image that has been compiled with the **+debug** option. *cprd* extracts and prints information on the name, type, storage class and address (absolute or offset) of program static data objects, function arguments, and automatic data objects that functions declare. For automatic data, the address provided is an offset from the frame pointer. For function arguments, the address provided is an offset from the stack pointer.

Command Line Options

cprd accepts the following command line options, each of which is described in detail below:

```
cprd [options] file
      -fc*  select function name
      -fl*  select file name
      -o*   output file name
```

where *<file>* is an object file compiled from C source with the compiler command line option **+debug** set.

- fc*** print debugging information only about the function *. By default, *cprd* prints debugging information on all functions in *<file>*. Note that information about global data objects is always displayed when available.
- fl*** print debugging information only about the file *. By default, *cprd* prints debugging information on all C source files.
- o*** print debugging information to file *. Debugging information is written to your terminal screen by default.

By default, *cprd* prints debugging information about all functions and global data objects in *<file>*.

Examples

The following example show sample output generated by running the

cprd utility on an object file created by compiling the program *acia.c* with the compiler option **+debug** set.

```
cprd acia.h11
```

Information extracted from acia.h11

source file acia.c:

(no globals)

unsigned char getch() lines 25 to 35 at 0xf016-0xf030
 auto unsigned char c at -1 from frame pointer

void outch() lines 39 to 44 at 0xf031-0xf03d
 argument unsigned char c at 3 from frame pointer

void recept() lines 50 to 56 at 0xf03e-0xf113
 (no locals)

void main() lines 62 to 71 at 0xf114-0xf06b
 (no locals)

The *clst* utility

The **clst** utility takes relocatable or executable files as arguments, and creates listings showing the C source files that were compiled or linked to obtain those relocatable or executable files. It is a convenient utility for finding where the source statements are implemented.

To use *clst* efficiently, its argument files must have been compiled with the **+debug** option.

clst can be instructed to limit its display to files occupying memory in a particular range of addresses, facilitating debugging by excluding extraneous data. *clst* will display the entire content of any files located between the endpoints of its specified address range.

Command Line Options

clst accepts the following command line options, each of which is described in detail below:

```
clst [options> file
      -a    list file alphabetically
      -f*>  process selected file
      -i*>  source file
      -l#    page length
      -o*    output file name
      -p    suppress pagination
      -r*    specify a line range #:#
```

-a when set, cause *clst* to list files in alphabetical order. The default is that they are listed by increasing addresses.

-f*> specify *** as the file to be processed. Default is to process all the files of the application. Up to 10 files can be specified.

-i*> read string *** to locate the source file in a specific directory. Source files will first be searched for in the current directory, then in the specified directories in the order they were given to *clst*. You can specify up to 20 different paths. Each path is a directory name, **not** terminated by any directory separator character.

-l# when paginating output, make the listings # lines long. By default, listings are paginated at 66 lines per page.

-o* redirect output from *clst* to file *. You can achieve a similar effect by redirecting output in the command line.

```
clst -o acia.lst acia.h11
```

is equivalent to:

```
clst acia.h11 >acia.lst
```

-p suppress pagination. No page breaks will be output.

-r#:# where #:# is a range specification. It must be of the form <number>:<number>. When this flag is specified, only those source files occupying memory in the specified range will be listed. If part of a file occupies memory in the specified range, that file will be listed in its entirety. The following is a valid use of **-r**:

```
-r 0xe000:0xe200
```


CHAPTER 8

Programming Support

This chapter describes each of the programming support utilities packaged with the C cross compiler targeting the [MC68HC11](#). The following utilities are available:

cbank	fill page window
chex	translate object module format
clabs	generate absolute listings
clib	build and maintains libraries
cobj	examine objects modules
cv695	generate IEEE695 format

The assembler is described in **Chapter 5**, “[Using The Assembler](#)”. The linker is described in **Chapter 6**, “[Using The Linker](#)”. Support for debugging is described in **Chapter 7**, “[Debugging Support](#)”.

The description of each utility tells you what tasks it can perform, the command line options it accepts, and how you use it to perform some commonly required operations. At the end of the chapter are a series of examples that show you how to combine the programming support utilities to perform more complex operations.

The cbank Utility

You use the **cbank** utility to optimize the bank filling with object files. **cbank** is given a list of object files and a bank size. It reorganizes the object list in order to fill as completely as possible the smallest amount of banks and produces as result a text file containing the object file names in the proper order. If the input file also contains bank start addresses (using the linker syntax), segment opening directives will be also output at the proper place with the specified information. Otherwise the object file list is supposed to be used in conjunction with the **-w** option of the linker allowing an automatic bank filling. In any cases, the file produced by the cbank utility can be directly inserted in the linker command file by a **+inc** directive.

Command Line Options

cbank accepts the following command line options, each of which is described in detail below:

```
cbank [options] file
      -m#      maximum available banks
      -n*      name of segment to pack
      -o*      output file name
      -w##     bank size
```

- m#** fill a maximum of # banks. If **cbank** needs more banks than the specified number, it will report an error message. By default, **cbank** fills as many banks as necessary.
- n*** sort sections whose name is equal to the string *. By default, **cbank** sorts **.text** sections.
- o*** write result to file *. The default is STDOUT.
- w##** set the bank size to ##.

Return Status

cbank returns success if no error messages are printed. Otherwise it returns failure.

Examples

The following command:

```
cbank -o bk_list -w 0x1000 obj_list
```

will generate `bk_list` as the result file, with a page window of size 0x1000 from the given list `obj_list` which contains:

```
file1.o
file2.o
file3.o
file4.o
```

The result will be:

```
# --- bank 1 --- # (3876/4096)
file1.o
file3.o
# --- bank 2 --- # (3900/4096)
file2.o
# --- bank 3 --- # (474/4096)
file4.o
```

The first value is the space used in the bank, and the second value is the bank size.

Bank start addresses can be included into the input file, such as:

```
-b0x10000 -o 0x8000 -n bank1
-b0x18000 -o 0x8000 -n bank2
-b0x20000 -o 0x8000 -n bank3
file1.o
file2.o
file3.o
file4.o
```

The result will be:

```
+seg .text -b0x10000 -o0x8000 -n bank1 # (3876/4096)
file1.o
file3.o
+seg .text -b0x18000 -o0x8000 -n bank2 # (3900/4096)
file2.o
+seg .text -b0x20000 -o0x8000 -n bank3 # (474/4096)
file4.o
```

The chex Utility

You use the **chex** utility to translate executable images produced by *clnk* to one of several hexadecimal interchange formats. These formats are: *Motorola S-record* format, and *Intel standard hex* format. You can also use *chex* to override text and data biases in an executable image or to output only a portion of the executable.

The executable image is read from the input file *<file>*.

Command Line Options

chex accepts the following command line options, each of which is described in detail below:

```
chex [options] file
-a## absolute file start address
-b## address bias
-e## entry point address
-f? output format
-h suppress header
+h* specify header string
-m# maximum data bytes per line
-n*> output only named segments
-o* output file name
-p use paged address format
-pn use paged address in bank only
-pp use paged address with mapping
-s output increasing addresses
-x*> exclude named segments
```

-a## the argument file is a considered as a pure binary file and ## is the output address of the first byte.

-b## subtract ## to any address before output.

-e## define ## as the entry point address encoded in the dedicated record of the output format, if available.

-f? define output file format. Valid options are:

i	Intel hex format
m	Motorola S19 format
2	Motorola S2 format
3	Motorola S3 format

Default is to produced Motorola S-Records (**-fm**). Any other letter will select the default format.

- h** do not output the header sequence if such a sequence exists for the selected format.
- +h*** insert * in the header sequence if such a sequence exists for the selected format.
- m#** output # maximum data bytes per line. Default is to output 32 bytes per line.
- n*>** output only segments whose name is equal to the string *. Up to twenty different names may be specified on the command line. If there are several segments with the same name, they will all be produced. This option is used in combination with the **-n** option of the linker.
- o*** write output module to file *. The default is STDOUT.
- p** output addresses of banked segments using a paged format `<page_number><logical_address>`, instead of the default format `<physical>`.
- pn** behaves as **-p** but only when logical address is inside the banked area. This option has to be selected when producing an hex file for the Noral debugger.
- pp** behaves as **-p** but uses paged addresses for all banked segments, mapped or unmapped. This option has to be selectd when producing an hex file for Promic tools.
- s** sort the output addresses in increasing order.

-x*>

do not output segments whose name is equal to the string *. Up to twenty different names may be specified on the command line. If there are several segments with the same name, they will not all be output.

Return Status

chex returns success if no error messages are printed; that is, if all records are valid and all reads and writes succeed. Otherwise it returns failure.

Examples

The file *hello.c*, consisting of:

```
char *p = {"hello world"};
```

when compiled produces the following the following *Motorola S-record* format:

```
chex hello.o
```

```
S00A000068656C6C6F2E6F44
S1110000020068656C6C6F20776F726C640090
S9030000FC
```

and the following *Intel standard hex* format:

```
chex -fi hello.o
```

```
:0E000000020068656C6C6F20776F726C640094
:00000001FF
```

The clabs Utility

clabs processes assembler listing files with the associated executable file to produce listing with updated code and address values.

clabs decodes an executable file to retrieve the list of all the files which have been used to create the executable. For each of these files, *clabs* looks for a matching listing file produced by the compiler (“**.js**” file). If such a file exists, *clabs* creates a new listing file (“**.ja**” file) with absolute addresses and code, extracted from the executable file.

To be able to produce any results, the compiler **must** have been used with the ‘**-l**’ option.

Command Line Options

clabs accepts the following command line options, each of which is described in detail below.

```
clabs [options] file
-a      process also library files
-cl*    listings files
-l      restrict to local directory
-p      use paged address format
-pn     use paged address in bank only
-pp     use paged address with mapping
-r*     relocatable listing suffix
-g*     absolute listing suffix
-v      echo processed file names
```

-a process also files located in libraries. Default is to process only all the files of the application.

-cl* specify a path for the listing files. By default, listings are created in the same directory than the source files.

-l process files in the current directory only. Default is to process all the files of the application.

-p output addresses of banked segments using a paged format `<page_number><logical_address>`, instead of the default format `<physical>`.

- pn** behaves as **-p** but only when logical address is inside the banked area.
- pp** behaves as **-p** but uses paged addresses for all banked segments, mapped or unmapped.
- r*** specify the input suffix, including or not the dot ‘.’ character. Default is “**.ls**”
- s*** specify the output suffix, including or not the dot ‘.’ character. Default is “**.la**”
- v** be verbose. The name of each module of the application is output to STDOUT.

<file> specifies one file, which must be in executable format.

Return Status

clabs returns success if no error messages are printed; that is, if all reads and writes succeed. An error message is output if no relocatable listing files are found. Otherwise it returns failure.

Examples

The following command line:

```
clabs -v acia.h11
```

will output:

```
crt.s.ls  
acia.ls  
vector.ls
```

and creates the following files:

```
crt.s.la  
acia.la  
vector.la
```

The following command line:

```
clabs -r.lst acia.h11
```

will look for files with the suffix “.lst”:

The following command line:

```
clabs -s.lx acia.h11
```

will generate:

```
crts.lx  
acia.lx  
vector.lx
```

The *clib* Utility

clib builds and maintains object module libraries. *clib* can also be used to collect arbitrary files in one place. *<library>* is the name of an existing library file or, in the case of replace or create operations, the name of the library to be constructed.

Command Line Options

clib accepts the following command line options, each of which is described in detail below:

```
clib [options] <library> <files>
-c      create a new library
-d      delete modules from library
-i*     object list filename
-l      load all library at link
-r      replace modules in library
-s      list symbols in library
-t      list files in library
-v      be verbose
-x      extract modules from library
```

- c** create a library containing *<files>*. Any existing *<library>* of the same name is removed before the new one is created.
- d** delete from the library the zero or more files in *<files>*.
- i*** take object files from a list *. You can put several files per line or put one file per line. Each lines can include comments. They must be prefixed by the '#' character. If the command line contains *<files>*, then *<files>* will be also added to the library.
- l** when a library is built with this flag set, all the modules of the library will be loaded at link time. By default, the linker only loads modules necessary for the application.
- r** in an existing library, replace the zero or more files in *<files>*. If no library *<library>* exists, create a library

containing *<files>*. The files in *<files>* not present in the library are added to it.

- s** list the symbols defined in the library with the module name to which they belong.
- t** list the files in the library.
- v** be verbose
- x** extract the files in *<files>* that are present in the library into discrete files with the same names. If no *<files>* are specified, all files in the library are extracted.

At most one of the options **-[c r t x]** may be specified at the same time. If none of these is specified, the **-t** option is assumed.

Return Status

clib returns success if no problems are encountered. Otherwise it returns failure. After most failures, an error message is printed to STDERR and the library file is not modified. Output from the **-t**, **-s** options, and verbose remarks, are written to STDOUT.

Examples

To build a library and check its contents:

```
clib -c libc one.o two.o three.o
clib -t libc
```

will output:one.o
two.o
three.o

To build a library from a list file:

```
clib -ci list libc six.o seven.o
```

where *list* contains:# files for the libc library
one.o two.o three.o
four.o
five.o

The *cobj* Utility

You use ***cobj*** to inspect relocatable object files or executable. Such files may have been output by the assembler or by the linker. *cobj* can be used to check the size and configuration of relocatable object files or to output information from their symbol tables.

Command Line Options

cobj accepts the following options, each of which is described in detail below.

```
cobj [options] file
      -d      output data flows
      -h      output header
      -n      output sections
      -o*     output file name
      -r      output relocation flows
      -s      output symbol table
      -v      display file addresses
      -x      output debug symbols
```

<file> specifies a file, which must be in relocatable format or executable format.

- d** output in hexadecimal the data part of each section.
- h** display all the fields of the object file header.
- n** display the name, size and attribute of each section.
- o*** write output module to file *. The default is STDOUT.
- r** output in symbolic form the relocation part of each section.
- S** display the symbol table.
- v** display seek addresses inside the object file.
- x** display the debug symbol table.

If none of these options is specified, the default is **-hns**.

Return Status

cobj returns success if no diagnostics are produced (*i.e.* if all reads are successful and all file formats are valid).

Examples

For example, to get the symbol table:

```
cobj -s acia.o
```

symbols:

```
_main:      0000003e section .text defined public
_outh:      0000001b section .text defined public
_buffer:    00000000 section .bss defined public
_ptecr:     00000000 section .bsct defined public zpage
_getch:     00000000 section .text defined public
_ptlec:     00000002 section .bsct defined public zpage
_recept:    00000028 section .text defined public
```

The information for each symbol is: name, address, section to which it belongs and attribute.

The cv695 Utility

cv695 is the utility used to convert a file produced by the linker into an IEEE695 format file.

Command Line Options

cv695 accepts the following options, each of which is described in detail below.

```
cv695 [options] file
      +V4      do not offset locals
      -d       display usage info
      +dpage   file uses data paging (HC12 only)
      -mod?    select compiler model
      +old     produce old format
      -o*      output file name
      +page#   define pagination (HC12 only)
      -rb     reverse bitfield (L to R)
      -v      be verbose
```

<*file*> specifies a file, which must be in executable format.

-V4 output information as per as *cv695* converter V4.x version. This flag is provided for compatibility with older version of *cv695* version. **DO NOT USE UNLESS SPECIFICALLY INSTRUCTION TO DO SO.**

-dpage output banked data addresses. **DO NOT USE THIS OPTION ON NON BANKED DATA APPLICATION. THIS FLAG IS CURRENTLY ONLY MEANINGFUL FOR THE MC68HC12.**

-d dump to the screen the interface information such as: frame coding, register coding, *e.g.* all the processor specific coding for IEEE (note: some of these codings have been chosen by COSMIC because no specifications exist for them in the current published standard).

THIS INFORMATION IS ONLY RELEVANT FOR WRITING A READER OF THE PRODUCED IEEE FORMAT.

-mod? where ? is a character used to specify the compilation model selected for the file to be converted.

THIS FLAG IS CURRENTLY ONLY MEANINGFULL FOR THE MC68HC16.

This flag mimics the flag used with C. Acceptable values are:

c	for compact model
s	for short model
t	for tiny model
l	for large model

+old output old format for MRI.

-o* where * is a filename. * is used to specify the output file for cv695. By default, if **-o** is not specified, cv695 send its output to the file whose name is obtained from the input file by replacing the filename extension with “.695”.

+page# output addresses in paged mode where # specifies the page type:

0	for no paging.
1	for pages with PHYSICAL ADDRESSES
2	for pages with banked addresses <page><offset_in_page>

By default linear physical addresses are output.

THIS FLAG IS CURRENTLY ONLY MEANINGFULL FOR THE MC68HC12.

-rb reverse bitfield from left to right.

-v select verbose mode. cv695 will display information about its activity.

Return Status

cv695 returns success if no problems are encountered. Otherwise it returns failure.

Examples

Under MS/DOS, the command could be:

```
cv695 C:\test\basic.h11
```

and will produce: `C:\test\basic.695`

and the following command:

```
cv695 -o file C:\test\basic.h11
```

will produce: `file`

Under UNIX, the command could be:

```
cv695 /test/basic.h11
```

and will produce: `test/basic.695`

Compiler Error Messages

This appendix lists the error messages that the compiler may generate in response to errors in your program, or in response to problems in your host system environment, such as inadequate space for temporary intermediate files that the compiler creates.

The first pass of the compiler generally produces all user diagnostics. This pass deals with `#` control lines and lexical analysis, and then with everything else having to do with semantics. Only machine-dependent extensions are diagnosed in the code generator pass. If a pass produces diagnostics, later passes will not be run.

Any compiler message containing an exclamation mark **!** or the word **'PANIC'** indicates that the compiler has detected an inconsistent internal state. Such occurrences are uncommon and should be reported to the maintainers.

- [Parser \(cp6811\) Error Messages](#)
- [Code Generator \(cg6811\) Error Messages](#)
- [Assembler \(ca6811\) Error Messages](#)
- [Linker \(clnk\) Error Messages](#)

Parser (cp6811) Error Messages

<name> not a member - field name not recognized for this struct/union

<name> not an argument - a declaration has been specified for an argument not specified as a function parameter

<name> undefined - a function or a variable is never defined

FlexLM <message>- an error is detected by the license manager

_asm string too long - the string constant passed to *_asm* is larger than 255 characters

ambiguous space modifier - a space modifier attempts to redefine an already specified modifier

array size unknown - the *sizeof* operator has been applied to an array of unknown size

bad # argument in macro <name> - the argument of a *#* operator in a *#define* macro is not a parameter

bad # directive: <name> - an unknown *#directive* has been specified

bad # syntax - *#* is not followed by an identifier

bad ## argument in macro <name> - an argument of a *##* operator in a *#define* macro is missing

bad #asm directive - a *#asm* directive is not entered at a valid declaration or instruction boundary

bad #define syntax - a *#define* is not followed by an identifier

bad #elif expression - a *#elif* is not followed by a constant expression

bad #else - a *#else* occurs without a previous *#if*, *#ifdef*, *#ifndef* or *#elif*

bad #endasm directive - a *#endasm* directive is not closing a previous *#asm* directive

bad #endif - a *#endif* occurs without a previous *#if*, *#ifdef*, *#ifndef*, *#elif* or *#else*

bad #if expression - the expression part of a *#if* is not a constant expression

bad #ifdef syntax - extra characters are found after the symbol name

bad #ifndef syntax - extra characters are found after the symbol name

bad #include syntax - extra characters are found after the file name

bad #pragma section directive - syntax for the *#pragma section* directive is incorrect

bad #pragma space directive - syntax for the *#pragma space* directive is incorrect

bad #undef syntax - *#undef* is not followed by an identifier

bad _asm() argument type - the first argument passed to *_asm* is missing or is not a character string

bad alias expression - alias definition is not a valid expression

bad alias value - alias definition is not a constant expression

bad bit number - a bit number is not a constant between 0 and 7

bad character <character> - *<character>* is not part of a legal token

bad defined syntax - the *defined* operator must be followed by an identifier, or by an identifier enclosed in parenthesis

bad function declaration - function declaration has not been terminated by a right parenthesis

bad integer constant - an invalid integer constant has been specified

bad invocation of macro <name> - a *#define* macro defined without arguments has been invoked with arguments

bad macro argument - a parameter in a *#define* macro is not an identifier

bad macro argument syntax - parameters in a *#define* macro are not separated by commas

bad proto argument type - function prototype argument is declared without an explicit type

bad real constant - an invalid real constant has been specified

bad return type for inline function - inline function must be declared with *void* return type

bad space modifier - a modifier beginning with a @ character is not followed by an identifier

bad structure for return - the structure for return is not compatible with that of the function

bad struct/union operand - a structure or an union has been used as operand for an arithmetic operator

bad symbol definition - the syntax of a symbol defined by the **-d** option on the command line is not valid

bad void argument - the type *void* has not been used alone in a proto-typed function declaration

can't create <name> - file <name> cannot be created for writing

can't open <name> - file <name> cannot be opened for reading

can't redefine macro <name> - macro <name> has been already defined

can't undef macro <name> - a *#undef* has been attempted on a pre-defined macro

compare out of range - a comparison is detected as being always true or always false (**+strict**)

const assignment - a *const* object is specified as left operand of an assignment operator

constant assignement in a test - an assignment operator has been used in the test expression of an *if*, *while*, *do*, *for* statements or a conditional expression (+strict)

duplicate case - two *case* labels have been defined with the same value in the same *switch* statement

duplicate default - a *default* label has been specified more than once in a *switch* statement

embedded usage of tag name <name> - a structure/union definition contains a reference to itself.

enum size unknow - the range of an enumeration is not available to choose the smallest integer type

exponent overflow in real - the exponent specified in a real constant is too large for the target encoding

float value too large for integer cast - a float constant is too large to be casted in an integer

hexadecimal constant too large - an hexadecimal constant is too large to be represented on an integer

illegal storage class - storage class is not legal in this context

illegal type specification - type specification is not recognizable

illegal void operation - an object of type *void* is used as operand of an arithmetic operator

illegal void usage - an object of type *void* is used as operand of an assignment operator

implicit int type in argument declaration - an argument has been declared without any type (+strict)

implicit int type in global declaration - a global variable has been declared without any type (**+strict**)

implicit int type in local declaration - a local variable has been declared without any type (**+strict**)

implicit int type in struct/union declaration - a structure or union field has been declared without any type (**+strict**)

incompatible argument type - the actual argument type does not match the corresponding type in the prototype

incompatible compare type - operands of comparison operators must be of scalar type

incompatible operand types - the operands of an arithmetic operator are not compatible

incompatible pointer assignment - assigned pointers must have the same type, or one of them must be a pointer to *void*

incompatible pointer operand - a scalar type is expected when operators `+=` and `-=` are used on pointers

incompatible pointer operation - pointers are not allowed for that kind of operation

incompatible pointer types - the pointers of the assignment operator must be of equal or coercible type

incompatible return type - the return expression is not compatible with the declared function return type

incompatible struct/union operation - a structure or an union has been used as operand of an arithmetic operator

incompatible types in struct/union assignment - structures must be compatible for assignment

incomplete *#elif* expression - a *#elif* is followed by an incomplete expression

incomplete #if expression - a *#if* is followed by an incomplete expression

incomplete type - structure type is not followed by a tag or definition

integer constant too large - a decimal constant is too large to be represented on an integer

invalid case - a *case* label has been specified outside of a *switch* statement

invalid default - a *default* label has been specified outside of a *switch* statement

invalid ? test expression - the first expression of a ternary operator (*? :*) is not a testable expression

invalid address operand - the “address of” operator has been applied to a *register* variable or an rvalue expression

invalid address type - the “address of” operator has been applied to a bitfield

invalid alias - an alias has been applied to an *extern* object

invalid arithmetic operand - the operands of an arithmetic operator are not of the same or coercible types

invalid array dimension - an array has been declared with a dimension which is not a constant expression

invalid binary number - the syntax for a binary constant is not valid

invalid bit assignment - the expression assigned to a bit variable must be scalar

invalid bit initializer - the expression initializing a bit variable must be scalar

invalid bitfield size - a bitfield has been declared with a size larger than its type size

invalid bitfield type - a type other than *int*, *unsigned int*, *char*, *unsigned char* has been used in a bitfield.

invalid break - a break may be used only in *while*, *for*, *do*, or *switch* statements

invalid case operand - a case label has to be followed by a constant expression

invalid cast operand - the operand of a *cast* operator is not an expression

invalid cast type - a cast has been applied to an object that cannot be coerced to a specific type

invalid conditional operand - the operands of a conditional operator are not compatible

invalid constant expression - a constant expression is missing or is not reduced to a constant value

invalid continue - a continue statement may be used only in *while*, *for*, or *do* statements

invalid do test type - the expression of a *do ... while()* instruction is not a testable expression

invalid expression - an incomplete or ill-formed expression has been detected

invalid external initialization - an external object has been initialized

invalid floating point operation - an invalid operator has been applied to floating point operands

invalid for test type - the second expression of a *for(;;)* instruction is not a testable expression

invalid function member - a function has been declared within a structure or an union

invalid function type - the function call operator `()` has been applied to an object which is not a function or a pointer to a function

invalid if test type - the expression of an `if()` instruction is not a testable expression

invalid indirection operand - the operand of unary `*` is not a pointer

invalid line number - the first parameter of a `#line` directive is not an integer

invalid local initialization - the initialization of a local object is incomplete or ill-formed

invalid lvalue - the left operand of an assignment operator is not a variable or a pointer reference

invalid narrow pointer cast - a cast operator is attempting to reduce the size of a pointer

invalid operand type - the operand of a unary operator has an incompatible type

invalid pointer cast operand - a cast to a function pointer has been applied to a pointer that is not a function pointer

invalid pointer initializer - initializer must be a pointer expression or the constant expression 0

invalid pointer operand - an expression which is not of integer type has been added to a pointer

invalid pointer operation - an illegal operator has been applied to a pointer operand

invalid pointer types - two incompatible pointers have been subtracted

invalid shift count type - the right expression of a shift operator is not an integer

invalid sizeof operand type - the *sizeof* operator has been applied to a function

invalid storage class - storage class is not legal in this context

invalid struct/union operation - a structure or an union has been used as operand of an arithmetic operator

invalid switch test type - the expression of a *switch* () instruction must be of integer type

invalid typedef usage - a typedef identifier is used in an expression

invalid void pointer - a *void* pointer has been used as operand of an addition or a subtraction

invalid while test type - the expression of a *while* () instruction is not a testable expression

missing ## argument in macro <name> - an argument of a *##* operator in a *#define* macro is missing

missing '>' in #include - a file name of a *#include* directive begins with '<' and does not end with '>'

missing) in defined expansion - a '(' does not have a balancing ')' in a *defined* operator

missing ; in argument declaration - the declaration of a function argument does not end with ';'.

missing ; in local declaration - the declaration of a local variable does not end with ';'.

missing ; in member declaration - the declaration of a structure or union member does not end with ';'.

missing ? test expression - the test expression is missing in a ternary operator (?:)

missing _asm() argument - the *_asm* function needs at least one argument

missing argument - the number of arguments in the actual function call is less than that of its prototype declaration

missing argument for macro <name> - a macro invocation has fewer arguments than its corresponding declaration

missing argument name - the name of an argument is missing in a prototyped function declaration

missing array subscript - an array element has been referenced with an empty subscript

missing do test expression - a *do ... while* () instruction has been specified with an empty *while* expression

missing enumeration member - a member of an enumeration is not an identifier

missing explicit return - a return statement is not ending a non-void function (+**strict**)

missing exponent in real - a floating point constant has an empty exponent after the 'e' or 'E' character

missing expression - an expression is needed, but none is present

missing file name in #include - a *#include* directive is used, but no file name is present

missing goto label - an identifier is needed after a *goto* instruction

missing if test expression - an *if* () instruction has been used with an empty test expression

missing initialization expression - a local variable has been declared with an ending '=' character not followed by an expression

missing initializer - a simple object has been declared with an ending '=' character not followed by an expression

missing local name - a local variable has been declared without a name

missing member declaration - a structure or union has been declared without any member

missing member name - a structure or union member has been declared without a name

missing name in declaration - a variable has been declared without a name

missing prototype - a function has been used without a fully prototyped declaration (+**strict**)

missing prototype for inline function - an inline function has been declared without a fully prototyped syntax

missing return expression - a simple return statement is used in a non-void function (+**strict**)

missing switch test expression - an expression in a *switch* instruction is needed, but is not present

missing while - a '*while*' is expected and not found

missing while test expression - an expression in a *while* instruction is needed, but none is present

missing : - a ':' is expected and not found

missing ; - a ';' is expected and not found

missing (- a '(' is expected and not found

missing) - a ')' is expected and not found

missing] - a ']' is expected and not found

missing { - a '{' is expected and not found

missing } - a '}' is expected and not found

missing } in enum definition - an enumeration list does not end with a `'` character

missing } in struct/union definition - a structure or union member list does not end with a `'` character

redeclared argument <name> - a function argument has conflicting declarations

redeclared enum member <name> - an *enum* element is already declared in the same scope

redeclared external <name> - an *external* object or function has conflicting declarations

redeclared local <name> - a *local* is already declared in the same scope

redeclared proto argument <name> - an identifier is used more than once in a prototype function declaration

redeclared typedef <name> - a *typedef* is already declared in the same scope

redefined alias <name> - an *alias* has been applied to an already declared object

redefined label <name> - a *label* is defined more than once in a function

redefined member <name> - an identifier is used more than once in structure member declaration

redefined tag <name> - a *tag* is specified more than once in a given scope

repeated type specification - the same type modifier occurs more than once in a type specification

scalar type required - type must be integer, floating, or pointer

size unknown - an attempt to compute the size of an unknown object has occurred

space attribute conflict - a space modifier attempts to redefine an already specified modifier

string too long - a string is used to initialize an array of characters shorter than the string length

struct/union size unknown - an attempt to compute a structure or union size has occurred on an undefined structure or union

syntax error - an unexpected identifier has been read

token overflow - an expression is too complex to be parsed

too many argument - the number of actual arguments in a function declaration does not match that of the previous prototype declaration

too many arguments for macro <name> - a macro invocation has more arguments than its corresponding macro declaration

too many initializers - initialization is completed for a given object before initializer list is exhausted

too many spaces modifiers - too many different names for '@' modifiers are used

truncating assignment - the right operand of an assignment is larger than the left operand (**+strict**)

unbalanced ' - a character constant does not end with a simple quote

unbalanced " - a string constant does not end with a double quote

<name> undefined - an undeclared identifier appears in an expression

undefined label <name> - a label is never defined

undefined struct/union - a structure or union is used and is never defined

unexpected end of file - last declaration is incomplete

unexpected return expression - a return with an expression has been used within a *void* function

unknown enum definition - an enumeration has been declared with no member

unknown structure - an attempt to initialize an undefined structure has been done

unknown union - an attempt to initialize an undefined union has been done

value out of range - a constant is assigned to a variable too small to represent its value (**+strict**)

zero divide - a divide by zero was detected

zero modulus - a modulus by zero was detected

Code Generator (cg6811) Error Messages

bad builtin - the *@builtin* type modifier can be used only on functions

bad @interrupt usage - the *@interrupt* type modifier can only be used on functions.

invalid indirect call - a function has been called through a pointer with more than one *char* or *int* argument, or is returning a structure.

redefined space - the version of *cp6811* you used to compile your program is incompatible with *cg6811*.

unknown space - you have specified an invalid space modifier *@xxx*

unknown space modifier - you have specified an invalid space modifier *@xxx*

PANIC ! bad input file - cannot read input file

PANIC ! bad output file - cannot create output file

PANIC ! can't write - cannot write output file

All other **PANIC !** messages should never happen. If you get such a message, please report it with the corresponding source program to COSMIC.

Assembler (ca6811) Error Messages

The following error messages may be generated by the assembler. Note that the assembler's input is machine-generated code from the compiler. Hence, it is usually impossible to fix things 'on the fly'. The problem must be corrected in the source, and the offending program(s) recompiled.

bad .source directive - a *.source* directive is not followed by a string giving a file name and line numbers

bad addressing mode - an invalid addressing mode have been constructed

bad argument number- a parameter sequence \n uses a value negative or greater than 9

bad character constant - a character constant is too long for an expression

bad comment delimiter- an unexpected field is not a comment

bad constant - a constant uses illegal characters

bad else - an *else* directive has been found without a previous *if* directive

bad endif - an *endif* directive has been found without a previous *if* or *else* directive

bad file name - the *include* directive operand is not a character string

bad index register - an invalid register has been used in an indexed addressing mode

bad register - an invalid register has been specified as operand of an instruction

bad relocatable expression - an external label has been used in either a constant expression, or with illegal operators

bad string constant - a character constant does not end with a single or double quote

bad symbol name: <name> - an expected symbol is not an identifier

can't create <name> - the file <name> cannot be opened for writing

can't open <name> - the file <name> cannot be opened for reading

can't open source <name> - the file <name> cannot be included

cannot include from a macro - the directive *include* cannot be specified within a macro definition

cannot move back current pc - an *org* directive has a negative offset

illegal size - the size of a *ds* directive is negative or zero

missing label - a label must be specified for this directive

missing operand - operand is expected for this instruction

missing register - a register is expected for this instruction

missing string - a character string is expected for this directive

relocatable expression not allowed - a constant is needed

section name <name> too long - a section name has more than 15 characters

string constant too long - a string constant is longer than 255 characters

symbol <name> already defined - attempt to redefine an existing symbol

symbol <name> not defined - a symbol has been used but not declared

syntax error - an unexpected identifier or operator has been found

too many arguments - a macro has been invoked with more than 9 arguments

too many back tokens - an expression is too complex to be evaluated

unclosed if - an *if* directive is not ended by an *else* or *endif* directive

unknown instruction <name> - an instruction not recognized by the processor has been specified

value too large - an operand is too large for the instruction type

zero divide - a divide by zero has been detected

Linker (clnk) Error Messages

-a not allowed with -b or -o - the *after* option cannot be specified if any start address is specified.

+def symbol <symbol> multiply defined - the symbol defined by a *+def* directive is already defined.

bad file format - an input file has not an object file format.

bad number in +def - the number provided in a *+def* directive does not follow the standard C syntax.

bad number in +spc <segment> - the number provided in a *+spc* directive does not follow the standard C syntax.

bad processor type - an object file has not the same configuration information than the others.

bad reloc code - an object file contains unexpected relocation information.

bad section name in +def - the name specified after the '@' in a *+def* directive is not the name of a segment.

can't create map file <file> - map file cannot be created.

can't create <file> - output file cannot be created.

can't locate .text segment for initialization - initialized data segments have been found but no host segment has been specified.

can't locate shared segment - shared datas have been found but no host segment has been specified.

can't open file <file> - input file cannot be found.

file already linked - an input file has already been processed by the linker.

function <function> is recursive - a *nostack* function has been detected as recursive and cannot be allocated.

function <function> is reentrant - a function has been detected as reentrant. The function is both called in an interrupt function and in the main code.

incomplete +def directive - the +def directive syntax is not correct.

incomplete +seg directive - the +seg directive syntax is not correct.

incomplete +spc directive - the +spc directive syntax is not correct.

init segment cannot be initialized - the host segment for initialization cannot be itself initialized.

invalid @ argument - the syntax of an optional input file is not correct.

invalid -i option - the -i directive is followed by an unexpected character.

missing command file - a link command file must be specified on the command line.

missing output file - the -o option must be specified.

missing '=' in +def - the +def directive syntax is not correct.

missing '=' in +spc <segment> - the +spc directive syntax is not correct.

named segment <segment> not defined - a segment name does not match already existing segments.

no default placement for segment <segment> - a segment is missing -a or -b option.

prefixed symbol <name> in conflict - a symbol beginning by 'f_' (for a banked function) also exists without the 'f' prefix.

read error - an input object file is corrupted

segment <segment> and <segment> overlap - a segment is overlapping an other segment.

segment <segment> size overflow - the size of a segment is larger than the maximum value allowed by the **-m** option.

shared segment not empty - the host segment for shared data is not empty and cannot be used for allocation.

symbol <symbol> multiply defined - an object file attempts to redefine a symbol.

symbol <symbol> not defined - a symbol has been referenced but never defined.

unknown directive - a directive name has not been recognized as a linker directive.

Modifying Compiler Operation

This chapter tells you how to modify compiler operation by making changes to the standard configuration file. It also explains how to create your own “programmable options” which you can use to modify compiler operation from the [cx6811.cxf](#).

The Configuration File

The configuration file is designed to define the default options and behaviour of the compiler passes. It will also allow the definition of programmable options thus simplifying the compiler configuration. A configuration file contains a list of options similar to the ones accepted for the compiler driver utility [cx6811](#).

These options are described in **Chapter 4**, “[Using The Compiler](#)”. There are two differences: the option **-f** cannot be specified in a configuration file, and the extra **-m** option has been added to allow the definition of a programmable compiler option, as described in the next paragraph.

The contents of the configuration file [cx6811.cxf](#) as provided by the default installation appears below:

```
# CONFIGURATION FILE FOR 68HC11 COMPILER
# Copyright (c) 1996 by COSMIC Software
#
-pu                      # unsigned char

-i c:\cx32\h6811        # include path
#
-m alu:,alu              # alu: use arithmetic unit
-m c0:,tc                # c0: use C0 style bank switching
-m debug:x              # debug: produce debug info
-m fast:hfast.h          # fast: use fast entry protocole
-m nobss:,bss            # nobss: do not use bss
-m nocst:,ct             # nocst: constant in text section
-m nostk:m0x0004         # nostk:@nostack for all functions
-m nowiden:nw -p        # nowiden: do not expand argument
-m rev:rb                # rev: reverse bit field order
-m strict:ck             # strict: enforce type checking
-m sprec:f               # use float only
-m st0:,st0,,st1,st2,st3# st0: static not shared in bss
-m st1:,st1,,st0,st2,st3# st1: static not shared in zpage
-m st2:,st2,,st0,st1,st3# st2: static shared in bss
-m st3:,st3,,st0,st1,st2# st3: static shared in zpage
-m zpage:hzpage.h       # zpage: @dir for all variables
```

The following command line:

```
cx6811 hello.c
```

in combination with the above configuration file directs the **cx6811** compiler to execute the following commands:

```
cp6811 -o \2.cx1 -u -i\cx32\h6811 hello.c
cg6811 -o \2.cx2 \2.cx1
co6811 -o \2.cx1 \2.cx2
ca6811 -o hello.o -i\cx32\h6811 \2.cx1
```

Changing the Default Options

To change the combination of options that the compiler will use, edit the configuration file and add your specific options using the **-p** (for the **p**arser), **-g** (for the code **g**enerator), **-o** (for the **o**ptimizer) and **-a** (for the **a**sssembler) options. If you specify an invalid option or combination of options, compilation will not proceed beyond the step where the error occurred. You may define up to 60 such options.

Creating Your Own Options

To create a programmable option, edit the configuration file and define the parametrable option with the **-m*** option. The string ***** has the following format:

```
name:popt,gopt,oopt,aopt,exclude...
```

The first field defines the option *name* and must be ended by a colon character **:**. The four next fields describe the effect of this option on the four passes of the compiler, respectively the *parser*, the *generator*, the *optimizer* and the *assembler*. These fields are separated by a comma character **,**. If no specific option is needed on a pass, the field has to be specified empty. The remaining fields, if specified, describe a exclusive relationship with other defined options. If two *exclusive* options are specified on the command line, the compiler will stop with an error message. You may define up to 20 programmable options. At least one field has to be specified. Empty fields need to be specified only if a useful field has to be entered after.

In the following example:

```
-m dl1:l,dl1,,,dl2# dl1: line option 1
-m dl2:l,dl2,,,dl1# dl1: line option 2
```

the two options *dl1* and *dl2* are defined. If the option **+dl1** is specified on the compiler command line, the specific option **-l** will be used for the *parser* and the specific option **-dl1** will be used for the *code generator*. No specific option will be used for the *optimizer* and for the *assembler*. The option *dl1* is also declared to be exclusive with the option *dl2*, meaning that *dl1* and *dl2* will not be allowed together on the compiler command line. The option *dl2* is defined in the same way.

Example

The following command line

```
cx6811 +nobss +rev hello.c
```

in combination with the previous configuration file directs the **cx6811** compiler to execute the following commands:

```
cp6811 -o \2.cx1 -u -rb -i\cx32\h6811 hello.c
cg6811 -o \2.cx2 -bss \2.cx1
co6811 -o \2.cx1 \2.cx2
ca6811-o hello.o -i\cx32\h6811 \2.cx1
```


MC68HC11 Machine Library

This appendix describes each of the functions in the Machine Library (**libm**). These functions provide the interface between the **MC68HC11** microcontroller hardware and the functions required by the code generator. They are described in reference form, and listed alphabetically.

Note that machine library functions handle values as follows:

- **integer** in **d** register or in **y** register. Shift counts are held in the **y** register.
- **longs** and **floats** in a register pair (“float register” or “long register” depending on context) whose low word is the **d** register and whose high word is at memory location **2,x**, where **x** is the current frame pointer.
- **pointer to long**, **float** or **double** in **y** register.

NOTE

*Library functions whose name end with the letter ‘a’ are called when the compiler is run with the **-dalu** option, using the **ALU** of the **MC68HC11 N4** family.*

c_check

Description

Check stack growth

Syntax

<pre>ldy #size jsr c_check</pre>

Function

c_check is used to check that the stack pointer is not overwriting valid data in memory. Users must write their own check functions, because the memory map is application-dependent. The value in **y** is the negative offset from the stack pointer to reach the desired value.

Return Value

c_check returns only if the stack pointer is correct. Otherwise, the behavior is user-dependent. *c_check* is called when the **-ck** flag is specified (raised) to the code generator (**cg6811**). This option produces larger and slower code. It should only be used for test and debugging. The libraries provided with the compiler include a version of *c_check* that always returns. It may be used as a template for user-written versions of this function.

c_dadd

Description

Add double to double

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y  
; pointer to right in d  
    jsr  c_dadd  
; result in left
```

Function

c_dadd adds the double pointed by the **y** register to the double pointed by the **d** register. No check is made for overflow.

Return Value

The resulting value is in left. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

See Also

c_dsub

c_dcmp

Description

Compare double with double

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y  
; pointer to right in d  
    jsr  c_dcmp  
; result in flags
```

Function

c_dcmp compares the double pointered by the **y** register with the double pointered by the **d** register.

Return Value

The **N** and **Z** flags are set to reflect the value of (left-right).

c_ddiv

Description

Divide double by double

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y  
; pointer to right in d  
    jsr  c_ddiv  
; result in left
```

Function

c_ddiv divides the double pointered by the **y** register by the double pointered by the **d** register.

Return Value

The resulting value is in left. A zero divide leaves the operand unchanged. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_dmul

Description

Multiply double by double

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y  
; pointer to right in d  
jsr c_dmul    or    jsr c_dmula  
; result in left
```

Function

c_dmul or *c_dmula* (with ALU) multiplies the double pointered by the **y** register by the double pointered by the **d** register.

Return Value

The resulting value is in left. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_dneg

Description

Negate a double

Syntax

```
; pointer to operand in y
    jsr  c_dneg
; result in memory
```

Function

c_dneg negates the double pointered by the **y** register.

Return Value

The resulting value is in the memory location pointered by **y**. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_dsub

Description

Subtract double from double

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y  
; pointer to right in d  
    jsr  c_dsub  
; result in left
```

Function

c_dsub subtracts the double pointed by the **d** register from the double pointed by the **y** register. No check is made for overflow.

Return Value

The resulting value is in left. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

See Also

c_dadd

c_dtod

Description

Copy a double into a double

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y  
; pointer to right in d  
    jsr  c_dtod  
; result in left
```

Function

c_dtod copies the double pointered by the **d** register to the double pointered by the **y** register.

Return Value

The right value is in left. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_dtof

Description

Convert double to float

Syntax

```
; pointer to double in y
    jsr  c_dtof
; result in float register
```

Function

c_dtof converts the double pointered by the **y** register to a float in *float register*. No check is made for overflow.

Return Value

The resulting value is in *float register*. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_dtoi

Description

Convert double to integer

Syntax

```
; pointer to double in y
    jsr  c_dtoi
; result in d
```

Function

c_dtoi converts the double pointered by the **y** register to a two byte integer in **d**. No check is made for overflow.

Return Value

The resulting value is in **d**. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_dtol

Description

Convert double into long integer

Syntax

```
; pointer to double in y  
    jsr  c_dtol  
; result in long register
```

Function

c_dtol converts the double pointered by the **y** register to a long in *long register*. No check is made for overflow.

Return Value

The resulting value is in *long register*. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_dtos

Description

Copy a double onto the stack

Syntax

```
; pointer to double in y  
jsr  c_dtos
```

Function

c_dtos copies the double pointered by the **y** register onto the stack.

Return Value

c_dtos returns nothing. The stack is updated.

c_ewbfb

Description

Eeprom char bit field update

Syntax

```
ldb    #value
ldy    #address
jsr    c_ewbfb
dc.b   <mask>
```

Function

c_ewbfb updates a char bit field (8 bits sized) located in *eeprom* with a new value. The new value is in **b** and is right justified. The byte address in *eeprom* is in **y**, and the mask, giving the bit field size and location, is a byte located in memory just after the call. The function waits for the time necessary to program the new value.

See Also

c_ewbfd, *c_ewstr*

c_ewbfd

Description

Eeprom short bit field update

Syntax

```
ldb  #value
ldy  #address
jsr  c_ewbfd
dc.w <mask>
```

Function

c_ewbfd updates a short bit field (16 bits sized) located in *eeprom* with a new value. The new value is in **y** and is right justified. The word address in *eeprom* is in **d**, and the mask, giving the bit field size and location, is in a word located after the call. The function waits for the time necessary to program the new value.

See Also

c_ewbfb, *c_ewstr*

c_ewrc

Description

Write a char int in *eprom*

Syntax

```
ldb  #value
ldy  #address
jsr  c_ewrc
```

Function

c_ewrc writes a byte in *eprom*. The new byte value is in **b** and its address in *eprom* is in. The function tests if the erasure is necessary, and do it only in that case. Then if the new value is different from one in *eprom*, the new byte is programmed. The function waits for the time necessary to program correctly the byte. The delay function included in the same module assumes that the clock frequency is **2 Mhz**. The function does not test if the byte address is in the address range corresponding to the existing *eprom*. These addresses may change in further versions of the processor.

See Also

c_ewrd, c_ewrl, c_ewrw

c_ewrd

Description

Write a double in *eprom*

Syntax

```
; pointer to destination on the stack  
; pointer to source on the stack  
jsr  c_ewrd
```

Function

c_ewrd writes a double in *eprom*. Pointers to source and destination are on the stack, and are removed by the return sequence. The function waits for the time necessary to program all the bytes.

See Also

c_ewrc, c_ewrl, c_ewrw

c_ewrl

Description

Write a long int in *eprom*

Syntax

```
; value in long register  
ldy #address  
jsr c_ewrl
```

Function

c_ewrl writes a long int in *eprom*. The new value is in the long register, and its address in *eprom* is in. Each byte is programmed independently by the *c_ewrc* function.

See Also

c_ewrc, *c_ewrd*, *c_ewrw*

c_ee wrw

Description

Write a short int in *ee prom*

Syntax

```
ldd  #value
ldy  #address
jsr  c_ee wrw
```

Function

c_ee wrw writes a short int in *ee prom*. The new value is in **d**, and its address in *ee prom* is in. Each byte is programmed independently by the *c_ee wrc* function.

See Also

c_ee wrc, *c_ee wrd*, *c_ee wrl*

c_ewstr

Description

Move a structure in *eeeprom*

Syntax

```
ldd    #source_address
ldy    #destination_address
jsr    c_ewstr
dc.w   <mask>
```

Function

c_ewstr moves a structure into an *eeeprom* memory location. Pointer to source is in **d**, and pointer to destination is in **y**. The structure size is given by a word located in program memory just after the call. Each byte is programmed independently by the *c_ewrc* function.

See Also

c_ewbfb, *c_ewbfd*, *c_ewrc*

c_entl

Description

Function entry

Syntax

```
jsr  c_entl  
dc.w <size>
```

Function

c_entl adds a new stack frame to the stack. The size of the frame's local variables is given by the next word in memory as indicated above.

Return Value

Nothing. When the function returns, it returns to the location after **.word**. The stack pointer is updated and the stack frame is set.

See Also

c_ents

c_ents

Description

Function entry

Syntax

```
jsr  c_ents  
dc.b <size>
```

Function

c_ents adds a new stack frame to the stack. The size of that frame's local variables is given by the next byte in memory.

Return Value

Nothing. When the function returns, it returns to the location after **.byte** following the call to *c_ents*. The stack pointer is updated and the stack frame is set.

See Also

c_entl

c_fadd

Description

Add float to float

Syntax

```
; left in float register  
; pointer to right in y register  
    jsr  c_fadd  
; result in float register
```

Function

c_fadd adds the float in *float register* to the float pointed to by the **y** register. No check is made for overflow.

Return Value

The resulting value is in *float register*. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

See Also

c_fsub

c_fcmp

Description

Compare floats

Syntax

```
; left in float register  
; pointer to right in y register  
jsr c_fcmp  
; result in flags
```

Function

c_fcmp compares the float in *float register* with the float pointered by the **y** register.

Return Value

The **N** and **Z** flags are set to reflect the value (left-right).

c_fdiv

Description

Divide float by float

Syntax

```
; left in float register  
; pointer to right in y register  
    jsr  c_fdiv  
; result in float register
```

Function

c_fdiv divides the float in *float register* by the float pointered by the **y** register.

Return Value

The resulting value is in *float register*. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_fgadd

Description

Add float to float in memory

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y register  
; right in float register  
    jsr  c_fgadd  
; result in left
```

Function

c_fgadd adds the float in the float pointered by the **y** register to the *float register*.

Return Value

The resulting value is stored at the location pointered by **y**. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

See Also

c_fgsub

c_fgdiv

Description

Divide float by float in memory

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y register  
; right in float register  
    jsr  c_fgdiv  
; result in left
```

Function

c_fgdiv divides the float in float pointered by the **y** register by the *float register*.

Return Value

The resulting value is stored at the location pointered by **y**. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_fgmul

Description

Multiply float by float in memory

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y register  
; right in float register  
jsr c_fgmul or jsr c_fgmula  
; result in left
```

Function

c_fgmul or *c_fgmula* (with ALU) multiplies the float in *float register* by the float pointed by the **y** register.

Return Value

The resulting value is stored at the location pointed by **y**. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_fgsub

Description

Subtract float from float in memory

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y register  
; right in float register  
    jsr  c_fgsub  
; result in left
```

Function

c_fgsub subtracts the float pointed at by the **y** register from the float in *float register*. No check is made for overflow.

Return Value

The resulting value is stored at the location pointed by **y**. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

See Also

c_fgadd

c_fmul

Description

Multiply float by float

Syntax

```
; left in float register  
; pointer to right in y register  
jsr c_fmul    or    jsr c_fmula  
; result in float register
```

Function

c_fmul or *c_fmula* (with ALU) multiplies the float in *float register* by the float pointered by the **y** register.

Return Value

The resulting value is in *float register*. Flags have no meaningful value upon return

c_fneg

Description

Negate a float

Syntax

```
; operand in float register  
jsr c_fneg  
; result in float register
```

Function

c_fneg negates the float in *float register*.

Return Value

The resulting value is in *float register*. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

See Also

c_dneg

c_fsub

Description

Subtract float from float

Syntax

```
; left in float register  
; pointer to right in y register  
jsr c_fsub  
; result in float register
```

Function

c_fsub subtracts the float pointered by the **y** register from the float in *float register*. No check is made for overflow.

Return Value

The resulting value is in *float register*. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

See Also

c_fadd

c_ftod

Description

Convert float into double

Syntax

```
; operand in float register  
; pointer to double in y register  
    jsr  c_ftod  
; result in memory
```

Function

c_ftod converts the float in *float register* to a double stored at the location pointed by the **y** register.

Return Value

The resulting value is stored at the location pointered by **y**. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_ftoi

Description

Convert float to integer

Syntax

```
; float in float register  
    jsr  c_ftoi  
; result in d
```

Function

c_ftoi converts the float in *float register* to a two byte integer in **d**. No check is made for overflow.

Return Value

The resulting value is in **d**. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_ftol

Description

Convert float into long integer

Syntax

```
; float in float register
    jsr  c_ftol
; result in long register
```

Function

c_ftol converts the float in *float register* to a four byte integer in *long register*. No check is made for overflow.

Return Value

The resulting value is in *long register*. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_idiv

Description

Quotient of integer division

Syntax

```
ldd    dividend
ldy    divisor
jsr    c_idiv    or    jsr    c_idiva
; quotient in d
```

Function

c_idiv or *c_idiva* (with ALU) divides the two byte integer in the **d** register by the two byte integer in the **y** register using the MC68HC11 'idiv' instruction. Values are assumed to be signed. If division by zero is attempted, results are as provided by the divide instruction.

Return Value

The quotient is placed in **d** and flags are set accordingly.

See Also

c_udiv, *c_imod*, *c_umod*

c_idivb

Description

Integer division by a byte constant

Syntax

```
ldd  operand
jsr  c_idivb
dc.b <constant>
```

Function

c_idivb divides the two byte integer in the **d** register by a byte constant. *<constant>* is a byte located in memory just after the call. No check is made for overflow.

Return Value

The resulting value is in **d** and the flags are set accordingly.

See Also

c_idiv, *c_imod*, *c_umod*

c_ilsh

Description

Integer left shift

Syntax

```
ldd    value
ldy    count
jsr    c_ilsh
; result in d
```

Function

c_ilsh left shifts the two byte integer in the **d** register by the number of bits specified by the **y** register. A zero count leaves the **d** register unchanged. No check is made for invalid counts.

Return Value

The resulting value is in **d**. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

See Also

c_lrsh, *c_ursh*

c_imod

Description

Remainder of integer division

Syntax

```
    ldd  dividend
    ldy  divisor
    jsr  c_imod  or jsr  c_imoda
; remainder in d
```

Function

c_imod or *c_imoda* (with ALU) divides the two byte integer in the **d** register by the two byte integer in the **y** register using the MC68HC11 ‘**idiv**’ instruction. Values are assumed to be signed. If division by zero is attempted, values are those provided by the divide instruction.

Return Value

The remainder is placed in **d** and flags are set accordingly.

See Also

c_umod, *c_idiv*, *c_udiv*

c_imul

Description

Integer multiplication

Syntax

```
ldd operand
ldy operand
jsr c_imul or jsr c_imula
; result in d
```

Function

c_imul or *c_imula* (with ALU) multiplies the two byte integer in the **d** register by the two byte integer in the **y** register. No check is made for overflow.

Return Value

The resulting value is in **d** and the flags are set accordingly.

See Also

c_imulb, *c_imul10*

c_imulb

Description

Integer multiplication by a byte constant

Syntax

```
ldd  operand
jsr  c_imulb
dc.b <constant>
```

Function

c_imulb multiplies the two byte integer in the **d** register by a byte constant. *<constant>* is a byte located in memory just after the call. No check is made for overflow.

Return Value

The resulting value is in **d** and the flags are set accordingly.

See Also

c_imul, *c_imul10*

c_imul10

Description

Integer multiplication by 10

Syntax

```
    ldd  operand
    jsr  c_imul10
; result in d
```

Function

c_imul10 multiplies the two byte integer in the **d** register by **10**. No check is made for overflow. This function is designed to enhance the conversion programs.

Return Value

The resulting value is in **d** and the flags are set accordingly.

See Also

c_imul, *c_imulb*

c_irsh

Description

Integer right shift

Syntax

```
ldd  value
ldy  count
jsr  c_irsh
; result in d
```

Function

c_irsh right shifts the two byte integer in the **d** register by the number of bits specified by the **y** register. A zero count leaves the **d** register unchanged. No check is made for invalid counts. The value is assumed to be signed, so a negative value will be kept negative as for arithmetic shift

Return Value

The resulting value is in **d**. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

See Also

c_ilsh, *c_ursh*

c_itod

Description

Convert integer into double

Syntax

```
    ldd    value
; pointer to double in y
    jsr    c_itod
; result in memory
```

Function

c_itod converts the two byte integer in the **d** register to a double stored in the location pointered by the **y** register.

Return Value

The resulting value is stored at the location pointered by **y**. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_itof

Description

Convert integer into float

Syntax

```
ldd  value
jsr  c_itof
; result in float register
```

Function

c_itof converts the two byte integer in the **d** register to a float stored in *float register*.

Return Value

The resulting value is in *float register*. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_jctab

Description

Perform C switch statement on char

Syntax

```
ldab value  
jsr c_jctab  
dc.b address0, address1,...
```

Function

c_jctab is called to switch to the proper code segment, depending on a value and an address table and a value located in the **b** register. The value is used as an index in the address table, which is located in the code just after the *jsr* instruction. The index is not checked against the table length.

Return Value

c_jctab jumps to the proper code. It never returns.

See Also

c_jtab, *c_jltab*

c_jltab

Description

Perform C switch statement on long

Syntax

```
; <value> in long register
    jsr  c_jltab
    dc.w swtab
```

Function

c_jltab is called to switch to the proper code segment, depending on a value and an address table. The top of the table is found in the word following the call instruction, and consists of a list of ranges followed by a list of pairs. A range consists of a header, composed of a count followed by a starting value, followed by an address list. A header with a zero count introduces the final list of pairs. The count is followed in this case by the number of following pairs. A pair consists of an address followed by a value. The pair list is ended by the default address. All values are four byte integers. All addresses are two byte integers.

Return Value

c_jltab jumps to the proper code. It never returns.

See Also

c_jctab, *c_jtab*

c_jtab

Description

Perform C switch statement

Syntax

```
ldd    value  
jsr    c_jtab  
dc.w   swtab
```

Function

c_jtab is called to switch to the proper code segment, depending on a value and an address table. The top of the table is found in the word following the call instruction, and consists of a list of ranges followed by a list of pairs. A range consists of a header, composed of a count followed by a starting value, followed by an address list. A header with a zero count introduces the final list of pairs. The count is followed in this case by the number of following pairs. A pair consists of an address followed by a value. The pair list is ended by the default address. All values and addresses are two byte integers.

Return Value

c_jtab jumps to the proper code. It never returns.

See Also

c_jctab, *c_jltab*

c_kenll

Description

Function entry with argument in **d** and **2,x**

Syntax

```
jsr  c_kenll  
dc.w <size>
```

Function

c_kenll behaves just like *c_entl*, but the first argument of the called function is in **d** and **2,x**. The two words are saved on the stack before opening the local variables area.

Return Value

Nothing. The stack pointer is updated and the stack frame is set.

See Also

c_entl, *c_kentl*

c_kenls

Description

Function entry with argument in **d** and **2,x**

Syntax

```
jsr  c_kenls  
dc.b <size>
```

Function

c_kenls behaves just like *c_ents*, but the first argument of the called function is in **d** and **2,x**. The two words are saved on the stack before opening the local variables area.

Return Value

Nothing. The stack pointer is updated and the stack frame is set.

See Also

c_ents

c_kenlt

Description

Function entry with argument in **b**

Syntax

```
jsr  c_kenlt  
dc.w <size>
```

Function

c_kenlt behaves just like *c_kentl*, but the first argument of the called function is in **b**. **b** is saved on the stack before opening the local variables area.

Return Value

Nothing. The stack is updated.

See Also

c_kentl

c_kenst

Description

Function entry with argument in **b**

Syntax

```
jsr  c_kenst  
dc.w <size>
```

Function

c_kenst behaves just like *c_kents*, but the first argument of the called function is in **b**. **b** is saved on the stack before opening the local variables area.

Return Value

Nothing. The stack is updated.

See Also

c_kents

c_kentl

Description

Function entry with argument in **d**

Syntax

```
jsr  c_kentl  
dc.w <size>
```

Function

c_kentl behaves just like *c_entl*, but the first argument of the called function is in **d**. **d** is saved on the stack before opening the local variables area.

Return Value

Nothing. The stack pointer is updated and the stack frame is set.

See Also

c_entl, *c_kentl*

c_kents

Description

Function entry with argument in **d**

Syntax

```
jsr  c_kents  
dc.b <size>
```

Function

c_kents behaves just like *c_ents*, but the first argument of the called function is in **d**. (**d**) is saved on the stack before opening the local variables area.

Return Value

Nothing. The stack pointer is updated and the stack frame is set.

See Also

c_ents

c_ladd

Description

Long integer addition

Syntax

```
; left in long register  
; pointer to right in y register  
    jsr  c_ladd  
; result in long register
```

Function

c_ladd adds the four bytes in *long register* and the four byte integer pointered by the **y** register.

Return Value

The result is in *long register*. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

See Also

c_lcmp, *c_lsub*

c_land

Description

Bitwise AND for long integers

Syntax

```
; left in long register  
; pointer to right in y register  
jsr c_land  
; result in long register
```

Function

c_land operates a bitwise AND between the operands. Each operand is taken to be a four bytes.

Return Value

The result is in *long register*. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

See Also

c_lor, *c_lxor*

c_lcmp

Description

Long integer compare

Syntax

```
; left in long register  
; pointer to right in y register  
    jsr  c_lcmp  
; result in flags
```

Function

c_lcmp compares the four bytes, left to the four bytes pointered by the **y** register.

Return Value

Flags are set accordingly.

See Also

c_ladd, *c_lsub*

c_ldiv

Description

Quotient of long integer division

Syntax

```
; left in long register  
; pointer to right in y register  
jsr c_ldiv or jsr c_ldiva  
; quotient in long register
```

Function

c_ldiv or *c_ldiva* (with ALU) divides the four bytes in *long register* by the four bytes pointered by the **y** register. Values are assumed to be signed. If division by zero is attempted, results are as provided by the divide instruction.

Return Value

The quotient is in *long register*. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

See Also

c_ludv, *c_lmod*, *c_umd*

c_lgadd

Description

Long addition

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y register  
; right in long register  
    jsr  c_lgadd  
; result in left
```

Function

c_lgadd performs the long addition of the value pointered by the **y** register and the value in *long register*.

Return Value

The result is stored at the location pointered by **y**. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

c_lgand

Description

Long bitwise AND

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y register  
; right in long register  
    jsr c_lgand  
; result in left
```

Function

c_lgand performs the long bitwise AND of the value in *long register* the value pointered by the **y** register.

Return Value

The result is stored at the location pointered by **y**. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

c_lgdiv

Description

Quotient of long integer division in memory

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y register  
; right in long register  
    jsr c_lgdiv orjsr c_lgdiva  
; result in left
```

Function

c_lgdiv or *c_lgdiva* (with ALU) divides the four bytes pointered by the **y** register by the four byte integer in *long register*. Values are assumed to be signed. If division by zero is attempted, results are as provided by the divide instruction.

Return Value

The quotient is stored in a location pointered by **y**. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

See Also

c_ludv, *c_lmod*, *c_umd*, *c_lgudv*

c_lglsh

Description

Long shift left

Syntax

```
; pointer to long in y register  
; shift count in y register  
jsr c_lglsh  
; result in memory
```

Function

c_lglsh performs the long left shift of the value pointered by the **y** register by the bit count in the **d** register. No check is done against silly counts.

Return Value

The result is stored in the location pointered by **y**. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

c_lgmod

Description

Remainder of long integer division in memory

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y register  
; right in long register  
    jsr c_lgmod or jsr c_lgmoda  
; result in memory
```

Function

c_lgmod or *c_lgmoda* (with ALU) divides the four byte integer pointed by the **y** register by the four byte integer in *long register*. Values are assumed to be signed. The dividend is returned in the case of division by zero.

Return Value

The remainder is stored in a location pointed by **y**.

See Also

c_lumd, *c_ldiv*, *c_lmod*, *c_udiv*, *c_lgudv*

c_lgmul

Description

Long multiplication in memory

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y register  
; right in long register  
jsr c_lgmul or jsr c_lgmula  
; result in memory
```

Function

c_lgmul or *c_lgmula* (with ALU) performs the long multiplication of the value pointed to by the **y** register by the value in *long register*.

Return Value

The result is stored in the location pointed to by **y**. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

See Also

c_lmul

c_lgor

Description

Long bitwise OR

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y register  
; right in long register  
    jsr  c_lgor  
; result in left
```

Function

c_lgor performs the long bitwise OR of the value pointered by the **y** register and the value in *long register*.

Return Value

The result is stored in a location pointered by **y**. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

c_lgrsh

Description

Signed long shift right

Syntax

```
; pointer to long in y register  
; shift count in d register  
jsr c_lgrsh  
; result in memory
```

Function

c_lgrsh performs the signed long right shift of the value pointed to by the **y** register and the value in *long register*. No check is done against silly counts. Because the value is signed, arithmetic shift instructions are used.

Return Value

The result is stored in the location pointed to by **y**. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

c_lgsub

Description

Long subtraction

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y register  
; right in long register  
    jsr  c_lgsub  
; result in left
```

Function

c_lgsub evaluates the (long) difference between the value pointed by the **y** register and the value in *long register*

Return Value

The result is stored in the location pointed by **y** Flags are not meaningful upon return.

c_lgudv

Description

Quotient of unsigned long division in memory

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y register  
; right in long register  
jsr c_lgudv orjsr c_lgudva  
; result in left
```

Function

c_lgudv or *c_lgudva* (with ALU) divides the four byte unsigned integer pointed by the **y** register by the four byte unsigned integer in *long register*. Values are assumed to be unsigned. If division by zero is attempted, results are as provided by the divide instruction.

Return Value

The quotient is stored in a location pointed by **y**. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

See Also

c_ludv, *c_lmod*, *c_umd*

c_lgumd

Description

Remainder of long unsigned integer division

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y register  
; right in long register  
    jsr c_lgumd orjsr c_lgumda  
; result in left
```

Function

c_lgumd or *c_lgmuda* (with ALU) divides the four byte unsigned integer pointered by the **y** register by the four byte unsigned integer in *long register*. Values are assumed to be unsigned. The dividend is returned in the case of division by zero.

Return Value

The remainder is stored in a location pointered by **y**. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

See Also

c_lmod, *c_ldiv*, *c_ludv*

c_lgursh

Description

Unsigned long shift right

Syntax

```
; pointer to long in y register  
; shift count in d register  
jsr c_lgursh  
; result in memory
```

Function

c_lgursh performs the unsigned long right shift of the value pointed to by the **y** register by the bit count specified in the **d** register. No check is done against silly counts. Because the value is unsigned, logical shift instructions are used.

Return Value

The result is stored in the location pointed to by **y**. Flags are not meaningful upon return

c_lgxor

Description

Long bitwise exclusive OR

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y register  
; right in long register  
    jsr  c_lgxor  
; result in left
```

Function

c_lgxor performs the long bitwise Exclusive OR of the value pointered by the **y** register and the value in *long register*.

Return Value

The result is stored in the location pointered by **y**. Flags are not meaningful upon return

c_llsh

Description

Long integer shift left

Syntax

```
; operand in long register  
; shift count in y register  
jsr c_llsh  
; result in long register
```

Function

c_llsh shifts left four bytes in *long register* by the number of bits specified by the **y** register. A zero count leaves the **d** register unchanged. No check is made for invalid counts.

Return Value

The resulting value is in *long register*. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

See Also

c_lrsh, *c_lursh*

c_lmod

Description

Remainder of long integer division

Syntax

```
; left in long register  
; pointer to right in y register  
    jsr c_lmod or jsr c_lmoda  
; remainder in long register
```

Function

c_lmod or *c_lmoda* (with ALU) divides the four bytes in *long register* by the four bytes pointered by the **y** register. Values are assumed to be signed. The dividend is returned in the case of division by zero.

Return Value

The remainder is in *long register*. Flags are not meaningful upon return

See Also

c_lumd, *c_ldiv*, *c_udiv*

c_lmul

Description

Multiply long integer by long integer

Syntax

```
; left in long register  
; pointer right in y register  
jsr c_lmul or jsr c_lmula  
; result in long register
```

Function

c_lmul or *c_lmula* (with ALU) multiplies the four bytes in *long register* by the four bytes pointered by the **y** register. No check is made for overflow.

Return Value

The resulting value is in *long register*. Flags are not meaningful upon return

See Also

c_lgmul

c_neg

Description

Negate a long integer

Syntax

```
; operand in long register  
    jsr  c_neg  
; result in long register
```

Function

c_neg negates the four bytes in *long register*.

Return Value

The result is in *long register*. The flags are not meaningful upon return.

See Also

c_lcom

c_lor

Description

Bitwise OR with long integers

Syntax

```
; left in long register  
; pointer to right in y register  
jsr c_lor  
; result in long register
```

Function

c_lor operates a bitwise OR between the contents of *long register* and the long pointered by the **y** register. Each operand is taken to be a four byte integer.

Return Value

The result is in *long register*. The flags are not meaningful upon return.

See Also

c_land, *c_lxor*

c_lrsh

Description

Long integer right shift

Syntax

```
; long in long register  
; shift count in y register  
    jsr  c_lrsh  
; result in long register
```

Function

c_lrsh right shifts the four bytes in *long register* by the number of bits specified by the **y** register. A zero count leaves the **d** register unchanged. No check is made for invalid counts. The value is assumed to be signed, so a negative value will stay negative as by an arithmetic shift.

Return Value

The resulting value is stored in *long register*. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

See Also

c_llsh, *c_lursh*

c_lrzmp

Description

Long test against zero

Syntax

```
; value in long register  
jsr c_lrzmp  
; result in the flags
```

Function

c_lrzmp tests the value in the *long register* and updates the sign and zero flags.

Return Value

Nothing, but the (possibly changed) flags.

c_lsub

Description

Long integer subtraction

Syntax

```
; long in long register  
; pointer to right in y register  
    jsr  c_lsub  
; result in long register
```

Function

c_lsub subtracts the four bytes pointered by the **y** register from the four bytes in *long register*.

Return Value

The result is in *long register*. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

See Also

c_ladd, *c_lcmp*

c_ltod

Description

Convert long integer into double

Syntax

```
; pointer to double in y register  
; operand in long register  
jsr c_ltod  
; result in memory
```

Function

c_ltod converts the four bytes in *long register* to a double pointered by the **y** register.

Return Value

The resulting value is stored in a double pointered by **y**. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_ltof

Description

Convert long integer into float

Syntax

```
; operand in long register  
    jsr  c_ltof  
; result in float register
```

Function

c_ltof converts the four bytes in *long register* to a float in *float register*.

Return Value

The resulting value is in *float register*. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_ludv

Description

Quotient of unsigned long integer division

Syntax

```
; left in long register  
; pointer to right in y register  
jsr c_ludv or jsr c_ludva  
; quotient in long register
```

Function

c_ludv or *c_ludva* (with ALU) divides the four bytes in *long register* by the four bytes pointered by the **y** register. Values are assumed to be unsigned. The dividend is returned in the case of division by zero.

Return Value

The quotient is in *long register*. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

See Also

c_ldiv, *c_lmod*, *c_lumd*

c_lumd

Description

Remainder of unsigned long integer division

Syntax

```
; left in long register  
; pointer to right in y register  
    jsr c_lumd or jsr c_lumda  
; quotient in long register
```

Function

c_lumd or *c_lumda* (with ALU) divides the four bytes in *long register* by the four bytes pointered by the **y** register. Values are assumed to be unsigned. The dividend is returned in the case of division by zero.

Return Value

The remainder is in *long register*. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

See Also

c_lmod, *c_ldiv*, *c_ludv*

c_lursh

Description

Unsigned long integer shift right

Syntax

```
; long in long register  
; shift count in y register  
jsr c_lursh  
; result in long register
```

Function

c_lursh right shifts the four bytes in *long register* by the number of bits specified by the **y** register. A zero count leaves the **d** register unchanged. No check is made for invalid counts. The value is assumed to be unsigned. The shift instruction used is therefore a logical shift.

Return Value

The resulting value stays in *long register*. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

See Also

c_llsh, *c_lrsh*

c_lxor

Description

Bitwise exclusive OR with long integers

Syntax

```
; left in long register  
; pointer to right in y register  
    jsr  c_lxor  
; result in long register
```

Function

c_lxor operates a bitwise Exclusive OR between the contents of *long register* and the long pointered by the **y** register. Each operand is taken to be a four byte integer.

Return Value

The result is in *long register*. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

See Also

c_land, *c_lor*

c_lzmp

Description

Compare a long integer to zero

Syntax

```
; pointer operand in y register  
    jsr c_lzmp  
; result in the flags
```

Function

c_lzmp compares the four bytes pointered by the **y** register to zero.

Return Value

Nothing, but the flags.

c_movstb

Description

Copy a structure to another

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y register  
; pointer to right in d register  
jsr c_movstb  
dc.b <length>
```

Function

c_movstb copies the structure at right into the structure at left. The length in bytes is stored in a byte located just after the call.

Return Value

Nothing.

See Also

c_movstw

c_movstw

Description

Copy a structure to another

Syntax

```
; pointer to left in y register  
; pointer to right in d register  
jsr c_movstw  
dc.w <length>
```

Function

c_movstw copies the structure at right into the structure at left. The length in bytes is stored in a word located just after the call.

Return Value

Nothing.

See Also

c_movstb

c_mspl

Description

Move stack pointer forward

Syntax

```
jsr  c_mspl  
dc.w <size>
```

Function

c_mspl moves the stack pointer forward by an amount given by the next word.

Return Value

Nothing.

See Also

c_msp

c_mspo

Description

Move stack pointer backward

Syntax

```
jsr  c_mspo  
dc.w <size>
```

Function

c_mspo moves the stack pointer backward by an amount given by the next word.

Return Value

Nothing. The stack pointer is updated.

See Also

c_mspl

c_msp

Description

Move stack pointer forward

Syntax

```
jsr  c_msp  
dc.b <size>
```

Function

c_msp moves the stack pointer forward by an amount given by the next byte.

Return Value

Nothing.

See Also

c_mspl

c_udiv

Description

Quotient of unsigned integer division

Syntax

```
ldd    dividend
ldy    divisor
jsr    c_udiv
; quotient in d
```

Function

c_udiv divides the two byte unsigned integer in the **d** register by the two byte unsigned integer in the **y** register, using the MC68HC11's **idiv** instruction. Values are assumed to be unsigned. If division by zero is attempted, results are as provided by the divide instruction.

Return Value

The quotient is stored in **d**. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

See Also

c_idiv, *c_imod*, *c_umod*

c_uitod

Description

Convert unsigned integer into double

Syntax

```
    ldd    value
    ; pointer to double in y register
    jsr    c_uitod
    ; result in memory
```

Function

c_uitod converts the two byte unsigned integer in **d** to a double pointered by the **y** register.

Return Value

The resulting value is store at location pointered by **y**. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_uitof

Description

Convert unsigned integer into float

Syntax

```
ldd    value
jsr    c_uitof
; result in float register
```

Function

c_uitof converts the two byte unsigned integer in the **d** register to a float stored in *float register*.

Return Value

The resulting value is in *float register*. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_ulcmp

Description

Unsigned long integer compare

Syntax

```
; left in long register  
; pointer to right in y register  
    jsr  c_ulcmp  
; result in flags
```

Function

c_ulcmp compares the four byte unsigned integer in *long register* to the four bytes pointered by the **y** register.

Return Value

Flags are set accordingly.

See Also

c_ladd, *c_lsub*, *c_lcmp*

c_ultod

Description

Convert unsigned long integer into double

Syntax

```
; pointer to double in y register  
; operand in long register  
    jsr c_ultod  
; result address in y
```

Function

c_ultod converts the four byte unsigned integer in *long register* to a double pointed by the **y** register.

Return Value

The resulting value is in double pointed by **y**. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_ultof

Description

Convert unsigned long integer into float

Syntax

```
    ; long in long register  
    jsr  c_ultof  
    ; result in float register
```

Function

c_ultof converts the four byte unsigned integer in *long register* to a float in *float register*.

Return Value

The resulting value is in *float register*. Flags have no meaningful value upon return.

c_umod

Description

Remainder of unsigned integer division

Syntax

```
ldd    dividend
ldy    divisor
jsr    c_umod
; remainder in d
```

Function

c_umod divides the two byte unsigned integer in the **d** register by the two byte unsigned integer in the **y** register, using the MC68HC11 **idiv** instruction. Values are assumed to be unsigned. If division by zero is attempted, results are as provided by the divide instruction.

Return Value

The remainder is placed in **d**. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

See Also

c_idiv, *c_imod*, *c_udiv*

c_ursh

Description

Unsigned integer shift right

Syntax

```
ldd    value
ldy    count
jsr    c_ursh
; result in d
```

Function

c_ursh right shifts the two bytes in the **d** register by the number of bits specified by the **y** register. A zero count leaves the **d** register unchanged. No check is made for invalid counts. The value is assumed to be unsigned. The shift instruction used is therefore a logical shift.

Return Value

The resulting value is stored in **d**. Flags are not meaningful upon return.

See Also

c_ilsh, *c_irsh*

c_wcalc

Description

Banked function call for the MC68HC11C0

Syntax

```
ldy    #desc  
jsr    c_wcalc
```

Function

c_wcalc calls a banked function assuming that the **y** register points at a two words descriptor. The first word contains the bank number, the second contains the target address.

Return Value

The value returned by the called function.

See Also

c_wsavc

c_wcalk

Description

Banked function call for the MC68HC11K4

Syntax

```
ldy  #desc  
jsr  c_wcalk
```

Function

c_wcalk calls a banked function assuming that the **y** register points at a two words descriptor. The first word contains the bank number, the second contains the target address.

Return Value

The value returned by the called function.

See Also

c_wsavk

c_wsavc

Description

Save bank descriptor for the MC68HC11C0

Syntax

```
jsr  c_wsavc
```

Function

c_wsavc is used to save the current descriptor pointer and to create a new descriptor onto the stack. The descriptor pointer is left pointing at the created area. This function is called just before to stack arguments, so the area is released with the argument cleaning of the calling function.

Return Value

Nothing.

See Also

c_wcalc

c_wsavk

Description

Save bank descriptor for the MC68HC11K4

Syntax

```
jsr  c_wsavk
```

Function

c_wsavk is used to save the current descriptor pointer and to create a new descriptor onto the stack. The descriptor pointer is left pointing at the created area. This function is called just before to stack arguments, so the area is released with the argument cleaning of the calling function.

Return Value

Nothing.

See Also

c_wcalk

Compiler Passes

The information contained in this appendix is of interest to those users who want to modify the default operation of the cross compiler by changing the configuration file that the **cx6811** compiler uses to control the compilation process.

This appendix describes each of the passes of the compiler:

cp6811	the parser
cg6811	the code generator
co6811	the assembly language optimizer

The cp6811 Parser

cp6811 is the parser used by the C compiler to expand *#defines*, *#includes*, and other directives signalled by a *#*, parse the resulting text, and outputs a sequential file of flow graphs and parse trees suitable for input to the code generator **cg6811**.

Command Line Options

cp6811 accepts the following options, each of which is described in detail below:

```
cp6811 [options] file
      -ck      extra type checkings
      -d*>     define symbol=value
      -e      run preprocessor only
      +e*     error file name
      -f      single precision floats
      -h*>     include header
      -i*>     include path
      -l      output line information
      -m#     model configuration
      -nc     no const replacement
      -ne     do enum optimization
      -np     allow pointer narrowing
      -nw     do not widen arguments
      -o*     output file name
      -p      need prototypes
      -rb     reverse bitfield order
      -s      do not reorder locals
      -sa     strict ANSI conformance
      -u      plain char is unsigned
      -xd     debug info for data
      -xp     no path in debug info
      -xx     extended debug info
      -x      output debug info
```

- ck** direct the compiler to enforce stronger type checking.
- d*^** specify * as the name of a user-defined preprocessor symbol (*#define*). The form of the definition is **-dsymbol[=value]**; the symbol is set to **1** if value is omitted. You can specify up to 60 such definitions.

- e** run preprocessor only. *cp6811* only outputs lines of text.
- +e*** log errors in the text file * instead of displaying the messages on the terminal screen.
- f** treat all floating point numbers as float and not double, even if they are declared as double. All calculations will be made on 32 bits instead of 64 bits. Space reservations will be made on a 32 bit basis, as well as argument passing.
- h*>** include files before to start the compiler process. You can specify up to 60 files.
- i*>** specify include path. You can specify up to 60 different paths. Each path is a directory name, **not** terminated by any directory separator character.
- l** output line number information for listing or debug.
- m#** the value # is used to configure the parser behaviour. It is a two bytes value, the upper byte specifies the default space for variables, and the lower byte specifies the default space for functions. A space byte is the or'ed value between a size specifier and several optional other specifiers. The allowed size specifiers are:

0x10	@tiny
0x20	@near
0x30	@far

Allowed optionals specifiers are:

0x02	@pack
0x04	@nostack

Note that all the combinations are not significant for all the target processors.

- nc** do not replace an access to an initialized const object by its value.

- ne** do not optimize size of *enum* variables. By default, the compiler selects the smallest integer type by checking the range of the declared *enum* members. This mechanism does not allow uncomplete *enum* declaration. When the **-ne** option is selected, all *enum* variables are allocated as *int* variables, thus allowing uncomplete declarations, as the knowledge of all the members is no more necessary to choose the proper integer type.
- np** allow pointer narrowing. By default, the compiler refuses to cast the pointer into any smaller object. This option should be used carefully as such conversions are truncating addresses.
- nw** do not widen arguments. The standard behaviour of the compiler is to widen integer arguments smaller than **int** to **int size** and to widen **float** arguments to **double**. If this flag is set, these promotions are not done. The code thus obtained should be more compact if **char** and **floats** are heavily used.
- o*** write the output to the file *. Default is STDOUT for output if **-e** is specified. Otherwise, an output file name is required.
- p** enforce prototype declaration for functions. An error message is issued if a function is used and no prototype declaration is found for it. By default, the compiler accepts both syntaxes without any error.
- rb** reverse the bitfield fill order. By default, bitfields are filled from **less** significant bit (**LSB**) to **most** significant bit (**MSB**). If this option is specified, filling works from most significant bit to less significant bit.
- s** do not reorder local variables. By default, the compiler sorts the local variables of a function in order to allocate the most used variables as close as possible to the frame pointer. This allows to use the shortest addressing modes for the most used variables.

- sa** enforce a strict ANSI checking by rejecting any syntax or semantic extension. This option also disables the enum size optimization (**-ne**).
- u** take a plain char to be of type **unsigned char**, not signed char. This also affects in the same way strings constants.
- x** generate debugging information for use by the cross debugger or some other debugger or in-circuit emulator. The default is to generate no debugging information.
- xd** add debug information in the object file only for data objects, hiding any function.
- xp** do not prefix filenames in the debug information with any absolute path name. Debuggers will have to be informed about the actual files location.
- xx** add debug information in the object file for any label defining code or data.

Return Status

cp6811 returns success if it produces no error diagnostics.

Example

cp6811 is usually invoked before *cg6811* the code generator, as in:

```
cp6811 -o \2.cx1 -u -i \cx32\h6811 file.c
cg6811 -o \2.cx2 \2.cx1
```

The *cg6811* Code Generator

cg6811 is the code generating pass of the C compiler. It accepts a sequential file of flow graphs and parse trees from *cp6811* and outputs a sequential file of assembly language statements.

As much as possible, the compiler generates freestanding code, but, for those operations which cannot be done compactly, it generates inline calls to a set of machine-dependent runtime library routines.

Command Line Options

cg6811 accepts the following options, each of which is described in detail below:

```
cg6811 [options] file
-a      optimize _asm code
-alu    use arithmetic unit
-bss    do not use bss
-ck     check stack frame
-ct     constants in code
-dl#    output line information
+e*     error file name
-f      full source display
-l      output listing
-no     do not use optimizer
-o*     output file name
-st#    static models
-t?     processor type
-v      verbose
```

-a optimize *_asm* code. By default, the assembly code inserted by a *_asm* call is left unchanged by the optimizer.

-alu produce code to run on processors with an extra arithmetic unit, such as M and N families.

-bss inhibit generating code into the *bss* section.

-ck enable stack overflow checking.

- ct** output constant in the **.text** section. By default, the compiler outputs literals and constants in the **.const** section.
- dl#** produce line number information. # must be either '1' or '2'. Line number information can be produced in two ways: 1) function name and line number is obtained by specifying **-dl1**; 2) file name and line number is obtained by specifying **-dl2**. All information is coded in symbols that are in the debug symbol table.
- +e*** log errors in the text file * instead of displaying the messages on the terminal screen.
- f** merge all C source lines of functions producing code into the C and Assembly listing. By default, only C lines actually producing assembly code are shown in the listing.
- l** merge C source listing with assembly language code; listing output defaults to `<file>.ls`.
- no** do not produce special directives for the post-optimizer.
- o*** write the output to the file * and write error messages to STDOUT. The default is STDOUT for output and STDERR for error messages.
- st#** where # specifies one of the *static models* as explained in **Chapter 3**, "[Stack Usage](#)".
- t?** where ? is the character **k** to select the **K** family, or the character **c** to select the **C** family. This option is used to configure the bank switching mechanism according to the processor specifics.
- v** When this option is set, each function name is send to STDERR when *cg6811* starts processing it.

Return Status

cg6811 returns success if it produces no diagnostics.

Example

cg6811 usually follows *cp6811* as follows:

```
cp6811 -o \2.cx1 -u -i\cx\h6811 file.c
cg6811 -o \2.cx2 \2.cx1
```


The co6811 Assembly Language Optimizer

co6811 is the code optimizing pass of the C compiler. It reads source files of **MC68HC11** assembly language source code, as generated by the *cg6811* code generator, and writes assembly language statements. *co6811* is a peephole optimizer; it works by checking lines function by function for specific patterns. If the patterns are present, *co6811* replaces the lines where the patterns occur with an optimized line or set of lines. It repeatedly checks replaced patterns for further optimizations until no more are possible. It deals with redundant load/store operations, constants, stack handling, and other operations.

Command Line Options

co6811 accepts the following options, each of which is described in detail below:

<pre>co6811 [options] <file> -c keep original lines as comments -d* disable specific optimizations -o* output file name -v print efficiency statistics</pre>
--

- c** leave removed instructions as comments in the output file.
- d*** specify a list of codes allowing specific optimizations functions to be selectively disabled.
- o*** write the output to the file * and write error messages to STDOUT. The default is STDOUT for output and STDERR for error messages.
- v** write a log of modifications to STDERR. This displays the number of removed instructions followed by the number of modified instructions.

If *<file>* is present, it is used as the input file instead of the default STDIN.

Disabling Optimization

When using the optimizer with the **-c** option, lines which are changed or removed are kept in the assembly source as comment, followed by a code composed with a letter and a digit, identifying the internal function which performs the optimization. If an optimization appears to do something wrong, it is possible to disable selectively that function by specifying its code with the **-d** option. Several functions can be disabled by specifying a list of codes without any whitespaces. The code letter can be enter both lower or uppercase.

Return Status

co6811 returns success if it produces no diagnostics.

Example

co6811 is usually invoked after *cg6811* as follows:

```
cp6811 -o \2.cx1 -u -i\cx\h6811 file.c
cg6811 -o \2.cx2 \2.cx1
co6811 -o file.s \2.cx2
```

Index

Symbols

- #asm directive 47
- #endasm directive 47
- #pragma
 - directive 37
- #pragma asm directive 46
- #pragma endasm directive 46
- +grp directive 273
- +seg option 270
- .bsct
 - +zpage option 38
 - initialized data 37
 - section 20, 199
 - section,generated 24
- .bsct section
 - label 191
- .bss
 - section 20, 199
 - section,generated 24
- .const
 - output section 457
 - section 20
 - segment 280
- .data
 - section 20, 199
 - section,generated 24
- .eeprom
 - section 41
- .L suffix 57
- .text
 - section 20, 199
- .ubsct
 - section 199
- @dir
 - space modifier 54
 - type qualifier 24
- @eeprom
 - type qualifier 13, 41
 - variable allocation 41
- @far
 - type qualifier 12
- @far function 54
- @interrupt
 - function 49
 - qualifier 49
- @nostack
 - modifier 42
- @port modifier 45
- __ckdesc__l 284
- __idesc__ 283, 284
- __memory symbol 21, 58
- __stack symbol 21
- __wbase symbol 79
- _asm
 - argument string size 48
 - assembly sequence 48
 - code optimization 456
 - in expression 49
 - lowercase mnemonics 49
 - return type 49
 - uppercase mnemonics 49
- _asm()
 - function 78
 - inserting assembler function 74
- _BASE symbol 46
- _checksum function 89

- `_sbreak` function 58
- `_wsetup()` function 79

Numerics

- 32 bits, float 453
- 68HC11C0
 - processor 69
- 8-bit precision, operation 11

A

- `abort` function 80
- `abs` function 81
- absolute
 - address 45, 298
 - address in listing 311
 - hex file generator 9
 - listing file 311
 - listing utility 10
 - map section 186
 - path name 455
 - referencing address 43
 - section relocation 278
 - symbol 272
 - symbol table 269
 - symbol tables 292
 - symbol, flagged 292
- absolute section 243, 252
- `acos` function 82
- address
 - banked 319
 - banked data 318
 - default format 309, 311
 - linear physical 319
 - logical end 271
 - logical start segment 278
 - logical start set 271
 - paged format 309, 311
 - physical 271, 319
 - physical end 270
 - physical start 270
 - physical start segment 278
 - set logical 271

- `align` directive 203
- allocate memory block 208
- allocate storage for constants 207
- application
 - embedded 264
 - system bootstrap 264
- argument
 - widen 454
- assembler
 - `include` directive 200
- `asin` function 83
- assembler
 - branch shortening 201
 - C style directives 202
 - code inline 47
 - conditional branch range 201
 - conditional directive 198
 - create listing file 187
 - `endm` directive 195
 - expression 194
 - filling byte 187, 203
 - listing process 311
 - listing stream 189
 - macro
 - instruction 195
 - macro directive 195
 - macro parameter 196
 - object file 188
 - operator set 194
 - predefined sections 199
 - section name 199
 - sections 199
 - special parameter `\#` 196
 - special parameter `*` 198
 - special parameter `\0` 197
 - switch directive 199
- assembleur
 - debug information
 - add line 188
 - label 188
- assembly language
 - code optimizer 459

- atan function 84
- atan2 function 85
- atof function 86
- atoi function 87
- atol function 88
- automatic

- bank filling 306

B

- bank

- automatic segment creation 272
 - disable 269
 - link application 51
 - logical start address 52
 - number 52
 - optimize filling 9, 306
 - physical start address 52
 - size setting 270, 306
 - switched system 278
 - window base register 52
 - window maximum size 52
 - window mechanism 12

- bank switching

- @far function 52
 - @far type modifier 51
 - _wbase symbol 53
 - _wsetup() function 53
 - c_desc pointer 52
 - call_descriptor 52
 - definition 51
 - external 51
 - far pointer 52
 - mechanism configuration 457
 - support 12

- base directive 204

- bias

- segment parameter 278
 - setting 279

- bitfield

- compiler reverse option 70
 - filling 454
 - filling order 70

- reverse order 454

- boundary

- round up 271

- bsct directive 205

- bss section 32

- buffer

- convert to double 86, 169

- convert to integer 87

- convert to long 88, 170

- convert to unsigned long 171

- copy from one to another 128, 129

C

- C identifier 107

- C interface

- to assembly language 53

- underscore character prefix 53

- C library

- floating point functions 75

- integer functions 74

- macro functions 75

- package 74

- C source

- lines merging 457

- c_check machine function 348

- c_dadd machine function 349

- c_dcmp machine function 350

- c_ddiv machine function 351

- c_desck pointer 52

- c_dmul machine function 352

- c_dmula machine function 352

- c_dneg machine function 353

- c_dsub machine function 354

- c_dtod machine function 355

- c_dtof machine function 356

- c_dtoi machine function 357

- c_dtol machine function 358

- c_dtos machine function 359

- c_ewbfb machine function 360

- c_ewbfd machine function 361

- c_ewrc machine function 362

- c_ewrwd machine function 363

c_ewrwl machine function 364
c_ewrw machine function 365
c_ewstr machine function 366
c_entl machine function 367
c_ents machine function 368
c_fadd machine function 369
c_fcmp machine function 370
c_fdiv machine function 371
c_fgadd machine function 372
c_fgdiv machine function 373
c_fgmul machine function 374
c_fgmula machine function 374
c_fgsub machine function 375
c_fmula machine function 376
c_fmula machine function 376
c_fneg machine function 377
c_fsub machine function 378
c_ftod machine function 379
c_ftoi machine function 380
c_ftol machine function 381
c_idiv machine function 382
c_idiva machine function 382
c_idivb machine function 383
c_ilsh machine function 384
c_imod machine function 385
c_imoda machine function 385
c_imul machine function 386
c_imul10 machine function 388
c_imula machine function 386
c_imulb machine function 387
c_irsh machine function 389
c_itod machine function 390
c_itof machine function 391
c_jctab machine function 392
c_jltab machine function 393
c_jtab machine function 394
c_kenll machine function 395
c_kenls machine function 396
c_kenlt machine function 397
c_kenst machine function 398
c_kentl machine function 399
c_kents machine function 400

c_ladd machine function 401
c_land machine function 402
c_lcmp machine function 403
c_ldiv machine function 404
c_ldiva machine function 404
c_lgadd machine function 405
c_lgand machine function 406
c_lgdiv machine function 407
c_lgdiva machine function 407
c_lglsh machine function 408
c_lgmod machine function 409
c_lgmoda machine function 409
c_lgmula machine function 410
c_lgmula machine function 410
c_lgor machine function 411
c_lgrsh machine function 412
c_lgsub machine library 413
c_lgudv machine function 414
c_lgudva machine function 414
c_lgumd machine function 415
c_lgumda machine function 415
c_lgursh machine function 416
c_lgxor machine function 417
c_llsh machine function 418
c_lmod machine function 419
c_lmoda machine function 419
c_lmul machine function 420
c_lmula machine function 420
c_lneg machine function 421
c_lor machine function 422
c_lrsh machine function 423
c_lrzmp machine function 424
c_lsub machine function 425
c_ltod machine function 426
c_ltof machine function 427
c_ludv machine function 428
c_ludva machine function 428
c_lumd machine function 429
c_lumda machine function 429
c_lursh machine function 430
c_lxor machine function 431
c_lzmp machine function 432

c_movstb machine function 433
c_movstw machine function 434
c_mspl machine function 435
c_mspo machine function 436
c_msps machine function 437
c_udiv machine function 438
c_uitod machine function 439
c_uitof machine function 440
c_ulcmp machine function 441
c_ultod machine function 442
c_ultof machine function 443
c_umod machine function 444
c_ursh machine function 445
c_wcalc machine function 446
c_wcalc machine function 447
c_wsavc machine function 448
c_wsavk machine function 449
calloc function 90
cbank utility 306
ceil function 91
char
 promoted to int 70
 signed 455
 unsigned 455
checksum
 -ck option 284
 crc 285
 functions 284
 -ik option 285
clabs utility 311
clib utility 314
clist directive 206, 221, 223, 224, 225,
 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231
clst utility 302
cobj utility 316
code generator
 compiler pass 456
 error log file 457
code optimizer
 compiler pass 459
code/data, no output 270
compilation model,selected 319
compiler
 .bsct section,generate 71
 ANSI checking 455
 assembler 9
 assembler option specification 67
 C preprocessor and language parser 8
 code generation option specification
 68
 code generator 8
 code optimization 10
 code optimizer 8
 combination of options 345
 command line options 66
 configuration file 344
 configuration file specification 68
 configuration file,predefined option
 69
 create assembler file only 69
 debug information,produce 70
 default behavior 66
 default configuration file 68
 default file names 72
 default operations 451
 default options 66, 344
 driver 4
 error file name 73
 error files path specification 67
 error message 66
 exclusive options 345
 flags 6
 generate error 321
 generate error message 73
 generate listing 73
 header files 75
 include path definition 68
 invocation 66
 listing file 68
 listing file path specification 68
 log error file 68
 name 66
 object file path specification 68
 optimizer option specification 69

-
- options 66
 - options request 66
 - parser option specification 69
 - predefined option selection 69
 - preprocessed file only 69
 - produce assembly file 18
 - programmable option 344, 345
 - single precision option 70
 - specific options 4
 - specify options 67
 - temporary files path 69
 - type checking 452
 - user-defined preprocessor symbol 68
 - verbose mode 19, 69
- const
- data 35
 - qualifier 35
- constant
- in .text section 457
 - numeric 192
 - prefix character 192
 - string 192
 - string character 193
 - suffix character 193
- convert
- hex format 308
 - IEEE695 format 318
- convert to 116
- cos function 92
- cosh function 93
- cprd utility 300
- cross-reference
- information 186
 - table in listing 189
- cv695 utility 318
- D**
- data
- 16 bits pointer representation 63
 - 32 bits pointer representation 63
 - automatic initialization 33
 - char representation 63
 - const type 35
 - const volatile 36
 - double representation 63
 - float representation 63
 - in eeprom space 41
 - in zero page 37
 - initialized 37
 - initialization 24
 - int representation 63
 - long integer representation 63
 - short int representation 63
 - volatile type 35
- data object
- automatic 300
 - scope 298
 - type 298
- data representation
- long integer 63
- dc directive 207
- dcb directive 208
- debug information
- adding 455
- debug symbol
- build table 287
 - table 298
- debugging
- data 298
 - support tools 297
- debugging information
- data object 298
 - extract 300
 - generate 298, 455
 - line number 298
 - print file 300
 - print function 300
- default
- bitfield order 454
- default placement
- .bsct segment 280
 - .bss segment 280
 - .data segment 280
 - .text segment 280

definition 287
DEFS 287
descriptor
 host to 270
div function 94
dlist directive 209
double
 library 281
ds directive 210

E

eeepcy function 95
eepera function 96
eeprom
 copy buffer 95
 erase full space 96
 fill character throughout buffer 97
 location 13, 41
eepset function 97
else directive 211, 212, 215, 221, 223, 230
end directive 213
end5 directive 217
endc directive 223, 230
endif directive 211, 214, 215, 221
endm directive 216, 235, 238, 250
endr 246, 247
enum
 size optimization 454
environment symbol 200
equ directive 218, 254
error
 assembler log file 187
 log file 269
 message list 321
 multiply defined symbol 191, 291
 undefined symbol 287
 undefined symbol in listing 188
error message 220
even directive 219
executable image 308
exit function 98

exp function 99
expression
 evaluation 195
 high 195
 low 195
 page 195
extra arithmetic unit 456

F

fabs function 100
fail directive 220
far function 52
file length restriction 298
fill
 bank 306
filling byte 210, 219, 243
float
 +sprec option 281
 argument size 454
 calculation 453
 single precision library 281
floating point library
 link 74
Floating Point Library Functions 75
floor function 101
fmod function 102
format
 IEEE695 318
 linker input/output 264
formatted argument 182, 183
frame pointer 56
free 103
free function 103
frexp function 104
function
 +fast option 40
 @fast type qualifier 40
 @nostack modifier 42
enforce prototype declaration 454
fast entry and exit 70
prototype declaration 454
return sequence 40

returning int 77
function arguments 300

G

generate

- .bsct section 54
- .bss section 54
- .const section 53
- .data section 54
- .text section 53
- hex record 271
- listing file 188
- object file 188

getchar function 105

gets function 106

group

- option 266

H

header files 76

heap

- alloc space 90
- allocate space on 124
- control 58
- free space 103
- location 60
- pointer 58
- reallocate space on 142
- start 58
- top 58

-help option 6

I

IEEE695

- format converter 10

if directive 211, 215, 221

if directive 214

ifc directive 222

ifdef directive 223

ifeq directive 224

ifge directive 225

ifgt directive 226

ifile directive 227

iflt directive 228

ifnc directive 229

ifndef directive 230

ifne directive 231

include

- file 274

- file before 453

- module 281

- object file 273

- path specification 453

- specify path 453

include directive 201, 232

initialization

- automatic 283

- define option 270

- descriptor 283

- descriptor address 284

- descriptor format 283

- first segment 283

- initialized segments 283

- marker 270

- startup routine 284

initialize storage for constants 207

inline

- #pragma directive 46

- assembly code 47

- assembly instruction 46

- block inside a function 47

- block outside a function 47

- with _asm function 47, 49

- with pragma sequences 46

inline code 40

input

- format description 144

- formatted read 144

- formatted read from string 155

integer

- library 281

interface information dump 318

interrupt

- function in map 293

- handler 49, 50
- hardware 49
- reset 31
- return sequence 49
- software 49
- vectors 50
- isalnum function 107
- isalpha function 108
- isctrl 109
- isdigit function 110
- isgraph function 111
- islower function 112
- isprint function 113
- ispunct function 114
- isspace function 115
- isupper function 116
- isxdigit function 117

L

- label 191
- labs function 118
- ldexp function 119
- ldiv function 120
- library
 - building and maintaining 314
- library
 - build and maintain 10
 - create 314
 - delete file 314
 - double precision 281
 - extract file 315
 - file 281
 - floating point 74
 - integer 74, 281
 - list file 315
 - load all files 314
 - load modules 267
 - machine 74
 - path specification 269
 - replace file 314
 - scanned 267
 - single precision 281

- Standard ANSI 281
- version 281
- line number
 - information 457
- link
 - command file 268
 - user command file 21
- linker
 - # character prefix,comment 267
 - build freestanding program 264
 - clnk 9
 - command file 266
 - command file example 294
 - command item 266
 - comment 267
 - global command line options 269
 - output file 265
 - physical memory 265
- list directive 233
- listing
 - cross reference 19
 - file location 27
 - file path specification 311
 - interspersed C and assembly file 18
- local directive 192, 234
- local variable
 - reorder 454
- locate source file 302
- log function 121
- log10 function 122
- logarithm 121
- long multiplication 410
- longjmp function 123
- lowercase 116

M

- macro
 - argument 196
 - exit 198
 - expansion in listing 198
 - internal label 191
 - named syntax 197

 numbered syntax 196
macro directive 235
main
 function 293
malloc function 124
map
 file description 292
 modules section 292
 produce information 269
 segment section 292
 stack usage section 292
 symbols section 292
max function 125
maximum 125
MC68HC11
 addressing mode 191
 C family 457
 direct addressing mode 191
 instruction set 190
 K family 457
 K4 window registers, initialization 79
 N4 family 347
memchr function 126
memcmp function 127
memcpy function 128
memmove function 129
memory
 allocate new 143
 location 43, 45
 mapped I/O 43
 private area 42
 shared area 42, 43
 static models 57
memory model 293
memset function 130
messg directive 237
mexit directive 236, 238
min function 131
minimum 131
mlist directive 239
modf function 132
Motorola
 old syntax 187, 201
 S-Records format 309
 standard S-record, generating 22
 syntax 190

N

named syntax, example 236, 247
natural 121
new
 segment control 266
 start region 275
nolist directive 240
nopage directive 241
numbered syntax, example 236, 247

O

object
 file location 27
 image 263
 module 264
 module inspector 10
 relocatable 316
 relocatable file size 316
 reorganization 306
 size 316
object file
 debug symbol, in 188
offset
 segment parameter 278
 setting 280
offset directive 242
optimization
 disable selectively 460
 keep line 460
 specific code 459
option
 global 268
org directive 243
output
 default format 309
 file name 268
 format specifiers 134

- formatted argument to buffer 152
- formatted arguments 134
- formatted string,conversion specifications 134
- listing line number 453
- specify format 134
- output to buffer 182, 183
- override
 - data bias 308
 - text bias 308

P

- page
 - address extension 195
 - value 195
- page directive 244
- page header 258
- paged
 - architecture 278
- paginating output 303
- parser
 - behaviour 453
 - compiler pass 452
 - error log file 453
- plen directive 245
- pointer
 - narrow 454
- pow function 133
- prefix
 - filename 455
- preprocessor
 - #define 452
 - #include 452
 - run only 453
- printf function 134
- private name region
 - use 288
- putchar function 139
- puts function 140

R

- rand function 141

- range specification 303
- realloc function 142
- redirect output 303
- REFs 287
- region
 - name 266
 - private 275
 - public 275
 - use of private name 288
- register
 - input-output 45
- relative address 298
- repeat directive 246
- repeatl directive 247
- restore directive 249
- rexit directive 247, 250
- ROM 43
- rotate vector through angle 92
- runtime startup
 - modifying 31

S

- save directive 251
- sbreak function 143
- scanf function 144
- section
 - curly braces,initilized data 39
 - definition 263
 - name 39
 - parenthesis,code 39
 - pragma definition 38
 - pragma directive 39
 - square brackets, uninitialized data 39
 - user defined 38
- section directive 252
- sections
 - default 38
 - predefined 38
 - relocation 278
- segment
 - bsct start address 273
 - bss start address 272

- build new 280
- control options 268, 270
- data start address 273
- definition 263
- fill 270
- follow current 270
- maximum size 271
- name 271
- overlap checking 272, 279
- overlapping 280
- overlapping control 272
- round up address 271
- section overlap 273
- shared data 271
- space name 279
- start,new 270
- text start address 273
- zero size 267
- segmented architecture 279
- separated address space 279
- set directive 254
- set new level 125, 131
- setjmp 123
- setjmp function 148
- shared data 286
- sin function 150
- single precision option 281
- sinh function 151
- source files listing 302
- source listings 302
- space
 - for function 453
 - for variable 453
- space name
 - definition 272
- spc directive 255
- sprintf function 152
- sqrt function 153
- rand function 154
- sscanf function 155
- stack
 - amount of memory 293
 - check overflow 456
 - frames 55
 - model in map 293
 - need 293
 - representation 56
- stack pointer 56
 - set 32
- stack space 103
- standard ANSI libraries 281
- static data 300
- static model
 - private area 70
 - shared area 71
- static models 42
- static models,specification 457
- strcat function 156
- strchr function 157
- strcmp function 158
- strcpy function 159
- strcspn function 160
- strlen function 161
- strncat function 162
- strncmp function 163
- strncpy function 164
- strpbrk function 165
- strchr function 166
- strspn function 167
- strstr function 168
- strtod function 169
- strtol function 170
- strtoul function 171
- suffix
 - assembly file 66
 - C file 66
 - input 312
 - output 312
- suppress pagination 303
- switch directive 256
- symbol
 - __memory 32
 - __sbss 32
 - __stack 32

- alias 288
- define 266
- define alias 276
- define new 276
- definition 276
- export 292
- logical end value, equal 276
- logical start value, equal 276
- physical end value, equal 277
- physical start value, equal 277
- size value, equal 277
- user-defined 452
- symbol table
 - add 276
 - information 316
 - new 287

T

- tab character setting 257
- tabs directive 257
- tan function 172
- tanh function 173
- task entries 293
- test for 107
- title directive 258
- tolower function 174
- toupper function 175
- translate executable images 308

U

- unreachable code
 - eliminate 11

V

- va_arg macro 176
- va_end function 178
- va_start macro 180
- variable
 - reorder local 454
- variable length argument list 178, 180
- virtual frame pointer 56
- volatile

- data 35
- memory mapped control registers 35
- qualifier 35
- using keyword 35
- vprintf function 182
- vsprintf function 183

W

- widen
 - argument 176
 - char 70
 - to int 176
- window
 - set shift 269
 - size 272
- window shift 278

X

- xdef directive 259, 260
- xref directive 259, 260

Z

- zero page
 - @dir qualifier 20
 - @dir type qualifier 37
 - maximum size 38
 - section 24, 37
 - set maximum size 38
- zero page section 205
- zpage
 - section 37

